Error Correction
in
Robust Storage Structures

by

Ian John Davis

A thesis
presented to the University of Waterloo
in fulfilment of the
thesis requirement for the degree of
Doctor of Philosophy
in
Computer Science

Waterloo, Ontario, 1988
© Ian John Davis 1988
I hereby declare that I am the sole author of this thesis.

I authorize the University of Waterloo to lend this thesis to other institutions or individuals for the purpose of scholarly research.

I further authorize the University of Waterloo to reproduce this thesis by photocopying or by other means, in total or in part, at the request of other institutions or individuals for the purpose of scholarly research.

( ii )
The University of Waterloo requires the signatures of all persons using or photocopying this thesis. Please sign below, and give address and date.
Error Correction

in

Robust Storage Structures

ABSTRACT

The need to develop reliable computer systems is of paramount importance in many endeavours. To achieve this goal all aspects of software and hardware engineering must be made independently and collectively as reliable as possible by all means available to the system architect. Almost all computer systems make extensive use of data structures, and it is therefore appropriate to ask how data structures can be made as reliable as possible.

Previously, global and local constraints were imposed on the distribution of errors in storage structures, and results developed which indicated when such constrained errors were correctable. Algorithms were then developed which corrected these classes of errors.

This dissertation shows that, under a potentially larger class of errors, correctable errors can be distinguished from errors which are not correctable. Guidelines are then presented for identifying this larger class of errors. Using these guidelines, a number of new correction algorithms are developed which perform correction whenever possible and otherwise report failure.

This dissertation also significantly extends the theory of local error correction; presents four new locally correctable tree structures; and uses mathematical models to describe the expected behaviour of local correction procedures operating on arbitrary and specific storage structures.
Acknowledgements

First and foremost I would like to acknowledge the contribution that my wife, Anne R. Crowe M.D., made to this research. Without her financial support I would have been unable to conduct this research. Without her emotional support I would certainly not have completed it. Her unswerving faith in me has made the impossible possible.

I also owe a great debt of gratitude to all the friends who supported me through difficult times. In particular, I would like to thank Carl Seger and Michel Devine for their friendship in a shared ordeal, and Wilfrid Laurier University for their encouragement in this endeavour. I would also like to express my thanks to my counsellor, W. M. Muirhead M.D. At the point when I first approached him for counselling, I did not believe that I could complete this dissertation. The resulting inner conflicts had plunged me from a state of depression into despair. Dr. Muirhead’s interest in me, and the medication that he prescribed, proved to be a critical turning point in the production of this thesis.

Clearly, this work would not have been possible without the assistance of my Ph.D. supervisor, Dr. D. J. Taylor. I am grateful to him for laying the foundations upon which this work is built; for his willingness to accept me into this program; and for the many years of supervision and backing that he has given me throughout this course of study. His diligence, perseverance, and attention to detail, are reflected in every page of this thesis.

Thanks are also extended to Dr. J. P. Black and Dr. G. V. Cormack for the interest that they have showed in this work, and for the assistance that they gave Dr. D. J. Taylor in supervising this work.

The experimental results presented in this thesis were obtained using ISSS, and the numerous graphs were produced using Maple and GTS. This software was developed by many people over a number of years, and these people were in turn supported by others. Collectively, their contribution is appreciated.

(v)
You smug-faced crowd with kindling eye
Who cheer when soldier lads march by
Sneak home and pray you'll never know
The hell where youth and laughter go.

SEIGFRIED SASSOON
# Table of Contents

## Chapter 1. Introduction
- 1.1. Preamble .......................................................... 1
- 1.2. Robust storage structures ........................................ 4

## Chapter 2. Background ............................................ 7
- 2.1. Terminology ....................................................... 7
- 2.2. Previous research ................................................ 8
- 2.3. System model ..................................................... 9
- 2.4. Crash recovery .................................................. 12

## Chapter 3. Global correction ....................................... 14
- 3.1. Introduction ...................................................... 14
- 3.2. Notation and terminology ....................................... 14
- 3.3. Connection ....................................................... 16
- 3.4. Valid State Hypothesis ......................................... 17
- 3.5. Reasonable procedures ......................................... 18
- 3.6. Seeming validity ............................................... 19
- 3.7. Correction procedures .......................................... 20
- 3.8. Selective correction ............................................ 25
- 3.9. Calculating the maximum selective correctability .......... 31
- 3.10. Using the selective correctability .............................. 33

## Chapter 4. Local correction ......................................... 40
- 4.1. Introduction ...................................................... 40
- 4.2. Local detection .................................................. 41
- 4.3. Votes ............................................................. 46
- 4.4. Local connection ................................................ 50
- 4.5. Local correction ................................................ 53
- 4.6. Local-correctable linearisations ............................... 58
- 4.7. Local-correctable instance states ............................. 59
- 4.8. Selective local correction ...................................... 61
- 4.9. Applications ..................................................... 65

## Chapter 5. Correcting mod(k) linked lists ......................... 67
- 5.1. Regular linked lists ............................................. 67
- 5.2. The mod(k) linked list ........................................... 68
- 5.3. Terminology ...................................................... 69
- 5.4. Votes ........................................................... 70
- 5.5. Proof of correctness ............................................ 71
5.6. Comparisons ................................................................. 80

Chapter 6. Correcting helix(k) linked lists ........................................ 81
6.1. Motivation ................................................................. 81
6.2. Votes ........................................................................... 82
6.3. Proof of correctness ...................................................... 83
6.4. Conclusions ............................................................... 90

Chapter 7. Locally correctable trees ............................................. 91
7.1. Introduction .............................................................. 91
7.2. A sibling-linked search tree ........................................... 92
7.2.1. Description ............................................................ 92
7.2.2. Local correction ..................................................... 93
7.2.3. Correcting keys ....................................................... 96
7.3. A robust AVL tree ....................................................... 97
7.3.1. Description ............................................................ 97
7.3.2. Global characteristics ............................................ 99
7.3.3. Local correction ..................................................... 100
7.4. A robust trie ............................................................. 104
7.4.1. Description ............................................................ 104
7.4.2. Additional redundancy .......................................... 105
7.4.3. Local correction ..................................................... 106
7.5. Conclusions ............................................................. 109

Chapter 8. Mathematical models ................................................ 110
8.1. Introduction .............................................................. 110
8.2. Constant error model .................................................. 111
8.3. Markov models .......................................................... 117
8.4. Regular linked lists ..................................................... 121
8.5. Tree structures .......................................................... 123
8.6. Conclusions ............................................................. 125

Chapter 9. Conclusions and further work .................................... 127
9.1. Conclusions ............................................................. 127
9.2. Further work ............................................................ 130

Appendix A1. A tertiary perfect Hamming code ......................... 133

Appendix A2. A quaternary perfect Hamming code ...................... 134

Appendix B1. Pseudocode for mod(k>3) correction algorithm ........ 135
Appendix B2. Pseudocode for helix\((k>3)\) correction algorithm .......... 136

Appendix C1. Empirical results for double-linked list structures .......... 137
  C1.1. Explanation ........................................................................ 137
  C1.2. Comments ......................................................................... 140

Appendix C2. Empirical results for multi-linked list structures .......... 142
  C2.1. Explanation ........................................................................ 142
  C2.2. Comments ......................................................................... 144

Appendix D. The unperturbed constant error model ...................... 145
  D.1. Explanation ......................................................................... 145

Appendix E. Analysis of connectivity using Markov models ............ 152
  E.1. Explanation ......................................................................... 152
  E.2. Markov models for linked lists ............................................ 153
  E.3. Markov model for binary trees .......................................... 156
  E.4. Graphs ............................................................................... 157

Appendix F. Analysis of local correction using Markov models ........ 163
  F.1. Explanation ......................................................................... 163
  F.2. Markov models for linked lists ............................................ 163
  F.3. Markov model for binary trees .......................................... 167
  F.4. Graphs ............................................................................... 168

References .................................................................................... 173
List of Figures

3.1. An instance state and the memory states containing it ................................... 16
3.2. Effect of correcting an error in $x_2$ producing $x_4$ .................................. 31
3.3. The instance $x_2$ lies two changes from both $x_f^2$ and $x_f^3$ ....................... 36
3.4. A mod(2) locality .................................................................................. 37
3.5. First method of constructing determining sets ....................................... 37
3.6. Second method of constructing determining sets .................................. 38
3.7. Third method of constructing determining sets ...................................... 38
4.1. Pointer changes needed to replace $N_1$ with $N_x$ ................................... 57
5.1. A correct mod($k$) locality ....................................................................... 69
5.2. An empty instance of a mod($k=3$) structure ........................................ 71
6.1. Pointers used in a correct helix($k$=3) locality ...................................... 83
6.2. An empty instance of a helix($k=3$) structure ....................................... 84
6.3. Configuration if $C_{k-2}$ and $D_k$ share $b_{k-1}$ ...................................... 86
6.4. Configuration if $D_{k-1}$ and $D_k$ share $b_{k-1}$ ....................................... 86
6.5. Configuration if $D_{k-2}$ and $D_k$ share $b_{k-1}$ ....................................... 86
6.6. $N_k^m.f_1$ being used by $C_k$ to support $N_n$ ......................................... 88
6.7. The path $N_n^m.f_1.b_k.f_1^{k-1}$ ................................................................. 88
7.1. An example of the sibling-linked search tree ......................................... 93
7.2. Pseudo votes used in the sibling-linked tree .......................................... 94
7.3. Arc traversal order in the AVL tree ..................................................... 98
7.4. An example of the proposed AVL tree .................................................. 98
7.5. A pair of undetectable changes in $N_w.a$ and $N_x.r$ ............................... 99
7.6. Three undetectable changes in $N_H^l$, $N_H^r$, and $N_H.a$ ....................... 100
7.7. Maximum null links $\emptyset$ between $N_x.c$ and $N_m.c$ .......................... 101
7.8. Possible configurations if left link or arc is in error ................................ 103
7.9. Arc traversal order in the m-ary Trie ................................................... 105
7.10. An example of a robust binary trie ..................................................... 106
7.11. Examples for which $N_x.l \neq \emptyset$ and $N_x.r \neq \emptyset$ ............................ 107
7.12. Both $N_x.l$ and $N_w.a$ address descendants of $N_x$ ............................. 108
8.1. A Markov model for connectivity in a double linked list .......................... 120
8.2. $N_1$ is connected if path from $N_3$ to $N_2$ ............................................. 122
8.3. $N_1$ is connected if path from $N_6$ to $N_5$ ............................................. 122
8.4. Correction of one error in any node containing four components .............. 123

(x)
## List of Theorems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theorem</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Theorem 3.1.</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theorem 3.2.</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theorem 3.3.</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theorem 4.1.</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theorem 4.2.</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theorem 4.3.</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theorem 5.1.</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theorem 6.1.</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theorem 8.1.</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theorem 8.2.</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theorem 8.3.</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(xi)
List of Lemmas

Lemma 3.1. ................................................................. 21
Lemma 3.2. ................................................................. 22
Lemma 3.3. ................................................................. 23
Lemma 3.4. ................................................................. 27
Lemma 3.5. ................................................................. 29
Lemma 4.1. ................................................................. 43
Lemma 4.2. ................................................................. 44
Lemma 4.3. ................................................................. 51
Lemma 4.4. ................................................................. 53
Lemma 4.5. ................................................................. 59
Lemma 4.6. ................................................................. 60
Lemma 4.7. ................................................................. 62
Lemma 5.1. ................................................................. 71
Lemma 5.2. ................................................................. 72
Lemma 5.3. ................................................................. 73
Lemma 5.4. ................................................................. 75
Lemma 5.5. ................................................................. 76
Lemma 6.1. ................................................................. 83
Lemma 6.2. ................................................................. 84
Lemma 6.3. ................................................................. 86
Lemma 8.1. ................................................................. 113
Lemma 8.2. ................................................................. 114
Lemma 8.3. ................................................................. 124
Chapter I

Introduction

1.1. Preamble

Many engineering and scientific endeavours currently being undertaken depend critically on the correct behaviour of computer hardware and software [1, 2, 8, 24, 33, 45, 77, 113, 136]. However, modern computer hardware and software are inherently very complex and thus subject to error from numerous sources [22, 54, 137, 139]. Some of these errors can be avoided by careful design [13, 26, 90], development [12, 23, 48, 92, 107], testing and periodic maintenance, but others will still occur [52, 53, 81, 98, 99].

If the occurrence of an error is not detected promptly then this error may cause a series of further errors which collectively result in a catastrophic failure. It is therefore desirable that errors be detected. Having detected an error (or collection of errors) some intelligent response must be made, if the consequences of this error are to be minimized. In many systems the best strategy is to report failure and enter a "down" state cleanly but rapidly [110]. However, in other systems such an approach is not viable, since entering a down state is itself a catastrophic failure. In such systems, errors must be contained, diagnosed, and, whenever possible, removed [5, 6, 96, 104].

Much research has been conducted into methods of protecting computer systems against hardware errors [32, 37, 60-62, 101]. These methods tend to use massive amounts of redundant hardware [10, 28, 87, 97, 130] to detect faulty circuits, and to predict the behaviour of a correct system. In some systems, redundant components also provide standby spares for critical components. Such techniques have also been proposed by many as a means of improving the reliability of software [4, 31, 69, 103], but some recent studies suggest that these techniques may be less
useful than anticipated [7, 38, 70, 71]. This is because independently developed versions of software often contain similar types of faults, which collectively mask the presence of errors. At a higher level of abstraction, information is often protected by using error-correcting codes. Many good codes are known that support detection and correction of a wide variety of errors [55, 64, 78, 88, 100]. Attempts have also been made to formally prove that hardware and software correspond to their intended design [65, 83, 134], but these attempts have met with limited success [44, 115, 116]. More recently, programming languages have been designed that assist in the development of reliable software [34, 82, 86, 112, 114, 135]. None the less, faults still occur. In desperation, some researchers have attempted to verify hardware and software by resorting to studies of its empirical behaviour, or by attempting to predict remaining faults by extrapolating from previously discovered faults.

The above techniques for coping with occasional errors achieve success by masking faults that might lead to failure, rather than by removing observed errors. If computer systems containing faults or developing errors must function correctly over an unbounded period of time, then periodically any errors that have been detected must be removed. Diagnosing erroneous hardware and software, while potentially tedious, is not generally difficult if one has tools that allow the behaviour of isolated sets of components to be monitored. This is because most hardware and software operates in a deterministic manner, producing definable outputs from given inputs. Having diagnosed the cause of an error, faulty hardware can be replaced and faulty software corrected.

Faults in hardware and software may introduce errors into data structures. These errors are very much harder to diagnose, simply because data structures change over time, and can continue to appear correct even when they contain errors. Historically, designers have therefore tended to use backups and some form of recovery log to provide protection against data structure errors [25, 73, 127, 131, 133].

Unfortunately, the costs associated with backing up data structures are very high [27, 29, 85, 109, 117]. Backups consume vast amounts of potentially valuable
storage. Backing up entire file systems usually involves suspending other ongoing computer activities for a considerable period of time, while any attempt to perform concurrent backups introduces severe scheduling and administrative problems, particularly in distributed systems. Recovery logs are produced concurrently with other ongoing activities, and therefore present fewer administrative problems than backups. However, recovery logs can also consume vast amounts of online storage, particularly if these logs are themselves to be protected against occasional errors. The logic needed to produce recovery logs is normally quite complex and therefore subject to error. In addition, this logic may, as a result of dramatically increasing the amount of input/output being performed within a computer system, seriously degrade the performance of that computer system.

Difficulties also arise when attempting to use backups to restore data to a correct state. It normally takes considerable time to coordinate such activities, and recovery, once initiated, often uses critical computing resources for a considerable period of time. Following the completion of all recovery activities, the status of the restored data remains very much in doubt. This is because the restored data is very dependent on the correctness of backups, recovery logs, and, perhaps most importantly, the recovery procedures used. Unfortunately, since such recovery procedures circumvent the need for error diagnosis, it is generally quite hard to ensure that all errors have been removed by the recovery procedure and that no new errors have been introduced. Often no effort is made to verify the correctness of the restored data and this naturally invites disaster.

Many users therefore endeavour to repair damaged data structures by guessing at the appropriate set of corrections [9, 11, 35, 93] and use backups only as a last resort. In desperation, others attempt this after discovering that backups have failed [132]. After a while the techniques used in making such guesses become formalized and embedded in "scavenger" programs that perform error detection and, when requested, automatic error correction [46, 50, 75, 84, 94, 106].

Clearly, we cannot expect scavenger programs to correct or even detect all errors. A small number of well chosen errors can undermine the behaviour of almost any conceivable scavenger. Conversely, a large number of errors can make
any intelligent response impossible, either by destroying all meaningful data, or by altering this data so that it becomes grossly misleading. However, these problems can be minimized by ensuring that system designers develop data structures and scavengers in parallel, and use all of the redundancy present in the design of the data structures when designing scavenger programs.

1.2. Robust storage structures

Designers of robust storage structures are very ambitious, and arguably foolhardy, individuals. They seek to develop structures which are competitive with existing storage structures and algorithms which can correct unspecified errors in these structures [17, 43, 49, 128]. In order to be competitive with existing structures, robust storage structures must be easy to implement, use and update, and must make efficient use of both space and time [56]. Correction algorithms should also be efficient in both space and time, and should have a proven ability to perform correction under a large class of errors. In addition, they should be capable of reporting failure, with high probability, when uncorrectable errors are encountered; otherwise, there is a considerable risk that unexpected errors will cause correction algorithms to introduce new errors into already erroneous structures.

A major problem besets the designer of a robust storage structure. Adding useful redundancy to an existing storage structure is difficult. This redundancy is only useful if it allows an, as yet unknown, algorithm to perform error detection, or preferably error correction, in an intelligent manner. Ideally, the designer would be given an exact specification for the desired behaviour of the correction algorithm, and then would be able to determine easily the optimal method of achieving this behaviour by carefully inserting redundancy into the structure being corrected.

As a first step towards meeting this goal, a number of related issues must be at least partially resolved, before we can even envision what such a specification might contain, how it might assist in the development of a robust storage structure, and how it might be used to verify that the resulting storage structure was in some sense optimal.
1) Given that a correction algorithm will necessarily be unable to correct all errors, what are the specifications that a correction algorithm should operate under? Specifications challenge designers to meet certain desirable goals, and are necessary if algorithms are to be formally shown to be correct. However, these specifications also blinker designers, and may (if poorly constructed) encourage them to reject excellent methods of protecting structural data against errors, simply because these methods violate some unimportant detail of the specification. Thus the specifications and goals of error correction must be constantly reviewed and improved upon whenever possible.

2) In order for a correction algorithm to be viable, it must be capable of deducing from damaged instances what the most appropriate response to this damage is. However, unless some assumptions are made about the nature of the errors introduced into the instance, this is impossible. One simplifying assumption is that errors are independent and uniformly distributed. This assumption is attractive since it allows many correction algorithms to be developed that have good theoretical behaviour. However, such simplifying assumptions are hardly realistic, and it is therefore essential that the behaviour of detection and correction algorithms be studied when operating on more realistic types and distributions of errors [47, 67].

3) The above is obviously important if one wishes to design good robust storage structures, but provides no indication of how such robust storage structures are to be developed. There is therefore a need to develop theoretical guidelines [105, 122, 123], indicating the properties that robust storage structures must have if they are to facilitate certain types of error correction. This would allow designers to easily reject inappropriate designs for robust storage structures, thus concentrating their efforts on those that appeared most promising.

4) Having developed a robust storage structure and an associated correction algorithm which has a provable behaviour under a certain class of errors, the nature of the robust storage structure should be carefully reviewed, and additional properties of this structure identified. This is an important activity, since it may reveal that the structure is more robust than first believed, or that
the structure can be corrected more efficiently or accurately using techniques not originally considered when designing the structure to meet a particular specification.

5) There is also a need to develop a variety of different robust storage structures, so that these can be evaluated and compared with existing storage structures. It is hoped that in the process new ideas and better methods of introducing redundancy into storage structures will be discovered.

6) The evaluation of robust storage structures and their associated correction routines has historically involved empirical studies, in which the size of the instance being corrected, and the distribution of errors within this instance were carefully controlled. There is a need to develop statistical models which provide an approximate indication of the likelihood of correction when these carefully controlled parameters vary. Such models would, if reasonably accurate, provide a much better indication of the expected behaviour of correction algorithms, and would allow more reasonable comparisons to be made between different robust storage structures and associated correction algorithms.

Previous research conducted into robust storage structures is reviewed in Chapter 2. Chapter 3 and Chapter 4 propose goals for error correction which are more general than those previously considered, and contain a number of theoretical results which may be used to determine when these goals can be achieved. Using these theoretical results, new correction algorithms are presented in Chapter 5 and Chapter 6, for various regular linked list structures, which would appear to be significantly better than previous correction algorithms proposed for similar structures. Three new robust tree structures are presented in Chapter 7, and in Chapter 8 mathematical models are developed which allow robust storage structures to be compared and analyzed very much more easily than was previously possible. Finally, in Chapter 9 conclusions are drawn and further avenues for research suggested.
Chapter II

Background

2.1. Terminology

For our purposes a *data structure* [121] is an abstract organization of data that allows units of data to be stored, accessed, and manipulated in a meaningful and useful way. A *storage structure* is a data structure design, and describes the type of nodes used to support the data structure, and the relationships between these nodes. A *storage structure encoding* defines one implementation of a storage structure, and thus specifies the *components* that exist within each node type, their representation and interpretation. A particular *instance* of a storage structure encoding is defined by the storage structure encoding to which it belongs, and by the *header nodes* that allow access to this instance. Finally, an *instance state* consists of all components (and associated values) currently occurring within that instance.

Storage structures typically contain several types of components. For example, *identifier* components explicitly establish the type of a node in a storage structure encoding, and identify the instance to which this node belongs. *Pointer* components establish access paths to nodes, typically by containing the address of these nodes. *Tag* components explicitly define the interpretation of other components in the instance. *Key* components explicitly define relationships between nodes in the instance. *Count* components explicitly define the number of nodes in an instance, the number of keys in a node, etc. *Checksum* components contain code words that facilitate error detection and/or correction of other components. Finally, *data* components contain information which, with respect to the storage structure specification, may be arbitrary.

Obviously, we may protest that data components contain values which are not arbitrary, but rather themselves highly structured. However, should we choose to
accept this position, then we must either append to our specification of the storage structure the rules which data components satisfy, or must abandon the concept of an all-inclusive structural specification. In the former case such components no longer contain arbitrary values and therefore cease to be data components, while in the latter case our specification ceases to be authoritative and therefore becomes of little theoretical use.

Because data components may contain arbitrary values with respect to the storage structure specification, this storage structure specification cannot, in isolation, be used to correct or even detect errors in data components. Without loss of generality, we will therefore assume that storage structures contain no data components. Using this assumption it should be clear that a storage structure instance contains no detectable errors if and only if it is consistent with its structural specification.

Having developed techniques for ensuring that structural components of a storage structure are correct, we may then cease to assume that this storage structure contains only structural components. However, if we wish this structure to remain robust, we must then devise means of protecting data components against error, by using internal or external information not contained in the structural specification.

2.2. Previous research

Historically, robust storage structures and their associated error detection and correction routines were developed in an ad hoc manner. The need to develop good specifications for the behaviour of correction algorithms was first addressed by Dr. Taylor in his Ph.D. dissertation [118] in which he established some preliminary guidelines for the requirements to be imposed on algorithms that attempted structural error correction. These guidelines had many similarities with goals long considered desirable in coding theory, and resulted in some similar theories. However, the idea of applying such guidelines in the development of robust storage structures was a monumental step forward, and provided the foundation on which all subsequent research into robust storage structures has been built.
The early specifications for the behaviour of correction algorithms required that these algorithms be able to correct some small maximum number of errors in any instance being examined, by making some essentially realistic assumptions about the nature of the data memory space containing the erroneous instances [19, 119, 120]. Algorithms that met these specifications were called “global correction algorithms”, while those that performed correction by examining only components reachable from the headers of an instance were considered “reasonable”.

As part of his Ph.D. dissertation [18] Dr. Black expanded upon Dr. Taylor’s work by developing theories pertaining to “macro” changes that modified entire nodes, and introduced new results pertaining to the robustness of composite storage structures. He also applied axiomatic descriptions to storage structures [36, 51, 89], and catalogued the properties of existing storage structures [14, 15]. Towards the end of his thesis he presented a very interesting alternative specification for the behaviour of correction algorithms, which required that correction algorithms be able to correct an unbounded number of errors in a storage structure, if these errors were in some sense sufficiently distant from each other. This led to the development of a formal specifications for “local detection” and “local correction” procedures [20].

This collective body of theory pertaining to error correction led to the creation of a number of new robust storage structures and associated correction procedures [76, 108, 111, 138], many of which [16, 95, 124] were incorporated into a complex control system called “ISSS” [128]. When incorporated into this control system, data structures could be deliberately seeded with errors using a number of different techniques, and the behaviour of various algorithms which operated on these data structures then studied empirically.

2.3. System model

The system model [118] used to study robust implementations of data structures assumes that all storage structure instances reside in a common data memory space that is distinct from the control memory space used to support the operating system, to store executing programs, and to contain their associated working storage, registers, etc. This data memory space may be resident in main memory, or may be
represented on disc or other peripheral devices. It may even be distributed among different devices and/or machines.

The data memory space comprises words of memory of some arbitrary fixed size. The number of words within this data memory space is finite, but very large. Each word in this data memory space has a distinct address, and contains in any given data memory state exactly one value.

Within this data memory space, storage structure instances may exist that each have a varying number of data nodes that are accessed via paths leading from some fixed set of header nodes. Each node is assumed to occupy some contiguous set of words within the data memory space, whose location is externally known if and only if the node is a header node. Internally, a uniquely identifying node name or number defines the location of each node. No word in a correct memory state occurs in more than one node, and typically all words in a correct data memory space occur in exactly one node.

Initially it is assumed that the data memory space contains some set of correct instance states. Instances may be changed by procedures which update these instances. Words in the data memory space may also be changed as a consequence of hardware, software, or other types of fault. If a word is assigned an incorrect value because of a fault, then it becomes erroneous. It remains erroneous until such time as it no longer contains an incorrect value. Although errors may be removed by faults, or by subsequent updates to the instances containing these errors, we obviously cannot rely on correction of errors by such means.

We will therefore periodically execute detection procedures which attempt to verify the correctness of the storage structure instances being examined. These procedures may be invoked as part of a preventative maintenance program, possibly occurring after each update, or may be specifically invoked when errors are detected by (or suspected in) concurrently executing software that manipulates these structures. Such procedures will also typically be executed following externally observable malfunctions, such as system failures.
When detection procedures report the presence of errors, it becomes the responsibility of a correction procedure both to correctly diagnose the nature of the errors observed, and, when appropriate, to remove these errors. Often the activities of detection and correction are closely associated and therefore integrated into a single procedure, which performs detection and potentially correction.

Generally, correction algorithms should only modify words in the data memory space when they have good reason to believe that this will reverse previously introduced erroneous changes. Otherwise the execution of such algorithms can be expected to introduce additional erroneous changes into the storage structure instance being examined, making subsequent correction very much harder, or impossible, to achieve.

While many processes are potentially concurrently accessing and updating instances of storage structures in the data memory space, it is assumed that a procedure attempting to detect or correct errors in the data memory space can use locking or other techniques to ensure that the instance currently being examined is not concurrently being updated. Thus the behaviour of these algorithms can be investigated in isolation, and the correctness of the structures being examined defined, either by reference to a detection procedure [118], or by presenting axiomatic specifications [18, 51].

Clearly, the system model described above is invalid in most computer systems, for a number of reasons. Typically, no data memory space exists for the exclusive purpose of representing all instances of storage structures, and such memory spaces as exist may vary in size. In virtual memory spaces, distinct words can cease to have distinct addresses, as a result of errors in the underlying mapping that supports these data memory spaces, and this can also occur as a result of hardware error. In most data memory spaces, a certain amount of duplication occurs, either in cache memory [63] or on peripheral devices, and therefore a single word in the data memory space may be capable of observably containing more than one value. Finally, in applications where reliable file structures might reasonably be used, we can expect to find hardware assuming some of the responsibility for detecting and correcting errors in the data memory space.
The assumption that detection and correction procedures observe instances in the data memory space which are not concurrently being updated, is also somewhat unrealistic in the presence of arbitrary errors, since such procedures may themselves inadvertently examine instances which they have not locked against concurrent access. Even when all instances are locked against concurrent access it is still possible for words to be occasionally changed as a result of faults. In cases where this might otherwise be of concern, we can assume that algorithms preserve their own sanity by rigorously examining each word in the data memory space at most once.

2.4. Crash recovery

It is often assumed that the robustness of a storage structure is merely a function of the amount of redundancy contained within that storage structure, and that the study of robust storage structures is therefore solely concerned with maximizing the robustness of useful storage structures, while minimizing the amount of data redundancy used.

This attitude is overly simplistic. Many factors determine the robustness of a storage structure. Obviously the type and frequency of errors that occur in a storage structure have a profound effect on the robustness of this storage structure. In particular, if most data structure errors occur as a result of instantaneous system crashes, then much can be accomplished by controlling the order in which updates are performed.

Although crash recovery is not addressed in this dissertation, by assigning a partial ordering to the sequence in which updates are applied to disc, some structures can be made crash resilient, without significantly degrading system performance. In particular, the logic that updates the Unix file system can ensure that this file system contains no structural errors following instantaneous system crashes [39].

This technique has also been used to show that a variety of linked-list structures can be made crash recoverable, and that these structures can be corrected by using existing local correction algorithms [125].
The possibility for performing crash recovery in binary trees has also been considered. In [129] it has been shown that existing global correction routines can perform crash recovery in some binary trees, if these binary trees are updated in a specific sequence using non-standard and somewhat inefficient update techniques. This paper assumes that correction algorithms have no knowledge of the method used to update such structures. Obviously, crash recovery of binary trees can be accomplished very much more simply and efficiently if such an assumption is not made.
Chapter III

Global correction

3.1. Introduction

This chapter explores how data memory spaces might be corrected when they contain at most some small bounded number of errors. After introducing some new notation and terminology, the previous body of theory that pertains to this problem is reviewed. This previous research attempts to identify the maximum number of errors which can necessarily be corrected in a data memory space containing some set of instances, and then, assuming that at most this number of errors occurs, suggests various methods of performing correction.

It is then suggested that correction algorithms might be able to tolerate more errors in the data memory space than allowed for by previous theories, if correction algorithms were designed so that they distinguished between correctable and uncorrectable sets of errors. After establishing bounds on the maximum number of errors that can be tolerated, if global correction is to be performed whenever possible, we present a new selective global correction algorithm which either corrects two errors in a mod(2) double-linked list or reports that these two errors have disconnected the structure.

3.2. Notation and terminology

When errors are introduced into words of the data memory space, a new corrupt data memory state is produced. Any instance containing one or more such errors is also considered corrupt. Corrupt instances which contain detectable errors will be considered incorrect. Otherwise they continue to appear correct. In a corrupt instance the header nodes can by assumption be located, but other structural information becomes suspect. In particular, data nodes belonging to the original
correct instance may become disconnected if all paths from the header nodes of this instance that correctly lead to these data nodes are damaged, while other arbitrary nodes may erroneously appear to be part of the corrupt instance. The state of an incorrect instance is therefore subjective. However, when the addresses of the header nodes of an incorrect instance are presented to an arbitrary deterministic algorithm, $P$, this algorithm examines, and possibly updates, a specific collection of words. These words constitute the state of the incorrect instance as observed by $P$, and when interpreted are referred to as components.

We will be primarily interested in the instance states $x_1$, $x_2$, etc. observed by a procedure, $P$, when the addresses, $H_x$, of the headers of an arbitrary instance, $X$, are presented to this procedure. It is stressed that although $x_1$ and $x_2$ represent different instance states, $x_1$ and $x_2$ have the same header nodes.

A correct instance state $x_i$ will be denoted by $x_i^c$, and the set of all correct instance states of $X$ by $x^c$. A specific data memory state containing an instance state $x_i$ will be denoted by $[x_i]^m$. As observed in [118] the procedure $P$ cannot distinguish between the memory state $[x_i]^m$ and the memory state $[x_i]^n$, since $P$ examines only components in $x_i$. The collection of memory states that $P$ cannot distinguish from $[x_i]^m$ form an equivalence class and will be denoted by $[x_i]$.

A small example clarifying this notation is presented in Figure 3.1.

The distance $d([x_i]^m,[x_j]^n)$ between two arbitrary memory states $[x_i]^m$ and $[x_j]^n$ is simply the number of words in these two data memory states that differ. Generalizing, the distance $d([x_i],[x_j])$ between two non-empty sets of memory states $[x_i]$ and $[x_j]$ is the minimum distance between any $[x_i]^m$ and any $[x_j]^n$. If $d([x_i]^m,[x_j])=d([x_i],[x_j])$ then $[x_i]^m$ is a closest member in $[x_i]$ to $[x_j]$. Finally, if $0<d([x_i],[x_j])<d([x_k],[x_j])$ for all $x_k \neq x_j$ then $[x_i]$ is closest to $[x_j]$. Note that there may be more than one set (or members of a set) of data memory states, which are closest to another set of data memory states, and that the distance between sets of data memory states is zero if and only if these sets contain some common member.
3.3. Connection

We will consider an arbitrary word occurring in $x^c_i$ to be erroneous in $[x^c_j]_k$ if the value of this word is different in $x^c_i$ and $[x^c_j]_k$. A correct instance state, $x^c_i$, whose header node addresses are known, remains connected in $[x^c_j]_k$, if the address of each word in $x^c_i$ can be determined without examining any erroneous words in $[x^c_j]_k$. Similarly, $x^c_i$ remains connected in $x_j$ if $x^c_i \subseteq x_j$ and all words in $x^c_i$ can be located in $x_j$ without examining any erroneous words in $x_j$. Finally, if all members of $X^c$ remain connected in the data memory space, when at most $n$ errors are introduced into the data memory space, then $X$ is $n$-connected.

It should be noted that if $x^c_i$ remains connected in $x_j$ and an arbitrary error (with respect to $x^c_i$) is removed from $x_j$, producing $x^c_k$, then $x^c_i$ remains connected in $x^c_k$. 

![Diagram showing instance state $x^c_i$ and memory states $[x^c_i]_1$ and $[x^c_i]$.]
Example 3.1

Consider a circular linked list having a single header node. Every node in this list contains $n$ forward pointers, which correctly address the next node in the list. For simplicity, assume that nodes contain no other components. If the structure contains at most $n-1$ errors then every node in this structure contains at least one correct pointer. Thus, this structure can be traversed by an algorithm which examines no erroneous components. Therefore the structure is $(n-1)$-connected. However, the structure is not $n$-connected, since $n$ errors can disconnect any non-null instance of this structure. Now consider placing $m \geq n$ errors into $m$ distinct nodes of some instance state, $x_f^c$, of this storage structure, producing the corrupt instance state $x_j$. If $n \geq 2$ then $x_f^c$ necessarily remains connected in $x_j$, as justified above. Otherwise, $x_f^c$ remains connected in $x_j$ if and only if $x_j$ contains a single error and this error occurs in the pointer which correctly contains the header address, $H_x$.

3.4. Valid State Hypothesis

In any data memory state containing no errors it will be assumed that the Valid State Hypothesis holds. This asserts [18, 118] that for any word $w$ belonging to a correct data memory state:

a) If $w$ can be interpreted as a node identifier of an arbitrary instance state $x_f^c$, then $w$ contains none of the set of node identifier values for $X$ unless $w$ is a node identifier component of $x_f^c$.

b) If $w$ can be interpreted as a pointer component of an arbitrary instance state $x_f^c$, then $w$ contains the address of no node in $x_f^c$ unless $w$ is a pointer component of

Any data memory state satisfying the Valid State Hypothesis is valid. The subset of the set of data memory states $[x_f^c]$ which are valid when assumed to contain only $x_f^c$ will be denoted by $[x_f^c]^v$. When the data memory state contains more than one instance state we will say that $[x_f^c]^v$ is valid (or satisfies the Valid State Hypothesis) with respect to $x_f^c$. Similarly, a single memory state $[x_f^c]_m \in [x_f^c]^v$ will be
denoted by \([x_f]^\nu\). It is stressed that \([x_f]^\nu\) is not necessarily valid, since a data memory state is valid if and only if it is valid with respect to all instance states contained within it. Indeed, if \(x_f^e\) contains a header node of some other instance, \(Y\), then no member of \([x_f]^\nu\) is valid, since \(Y\) is necessarily invalid in \([x_f]\). Additional examples of invalidity are presented later in Example 3.2.

If \(r < \min(d([x_f]^\nu, [x_f]^\nu))\) for all \(x_f^e\) and \(x_f^f\) satisfying \(x_f^e \neq x_f^f\), then the instance \(X\) is \(r\)-detectable. Similarly, if \(r < \min(d([x_f]^\nu, [x_f]^\nu))\) for all \(x_f^e\) and \(x_f^f\) satisfying \(x_f^e \neq x_f^f\), then the instance \(X\) is \(r\)-absolute-detectable. These and other properties become exact, if they are maximal. When all instances of a storage structure have a particular property, as is typically the case, the storage structure also has this property [118].

3.5. Reasonable procedures

Two types of procedure will be of particular importance to us. A detection procedure, \(P_1\), when presented with the addresses, \(H_x\), of the headers of an arbitrary instance, \(X\), on which it has been designed to operate, and a data memory state \([x_i]^m\), determines if \(x_i \in x^e\). A correction procedure, \(P_2\), when presented with the same information, either attempts to transform \([x_i]^m\) into some suitable \([x_f]^\nu\), or reports that it is unable to perform this transformation.

Unfortunately, determining that \([x_f]^n \in [x_f]^\nu\), involves examining every component in the data memory state. This is obviously not very desirable when attempting to correct isolated storage structure instances, since it implies that the correction time will be dependent on the size of the data memory state, rather than the size of the instance being corrected, which may possibly be very small. In addition, algorithms that examine the entire data memory state will almost certainly require that this data memory space be in a quiescent state, even though most instances will be correct, and thus potentially modifiable.

It therefore seems appropriate to develop reasonable algorithms [118] which, when presented with the header node addresses, \(H_x\), of \(x_i\), locate all other nodes of \(x_i\) by using pointers occurring in \(x_i\), which form paths from these header nodes.
Although a reasonable algorithm operating on a corrupt data memory state may continue to observe instances, \( x_i \), whose size is bounded only by the size of the data memory space, we will endeavour to design reasonable algorithms which display this behaviour only when certain assumptions about the nature of errors encountered are violated. In this chapter, it will be assumed that reasonable algorithms operate on instances that contain some bounded number of errors. When nodes within these instances contain node identifiers, this implies [118] that reasonable algorithms need traverse at most some bounded number of nodes not present in the original instance being corrected.

### 3.6. Seeming validity

Although we wish to develop correction procedures which exploit violations of the Valid State Hypothesis, reasonable algorithms cannot by their nature determine if \( [x_f]_n \) is valid. However, a reasonable correction algorithm operating on \( [x_i]_m \) may be able to determine that some other data memory state \( [x_f']_n \) contains violations of the Valid State Hypothesis with respect to \( x_f' \), even though reasonable algorithms that operated on \( [x_f]_n \) can not. This is because \( x_i \) may contain nodes not in \( x_f' \), whose component values violate the Valid State Hypothesis with respect to \( x_f' \) when occurring in \( [x_f']_n \).

We will consider \( [x_f']_n \) to be seemingly valid with respect to an instance state \( x_i \), if violations of the Valid State Hypothesis with respect to \( x_f' \) do not occur, or can be detected in \( [x_f']_n \) only by examining components neither in \( x_i \) nor \( x_f' \). When the context is clear we will denote a seemingly valid data memory state \( [x_f']_n \) by \( [x_f'v]_n \), the class of seemingly valid data memory states containing \( x_f' \) by \( [x_f'v] \), and the class of all data memory states which are seemingly valid with respect to \( x_i \) by \( [x_f'v] \).

If components in \( x_f' \) violate the validity of \( x_f' \), then serious problems arise. This is because \( d([x_i],[x_f'v]) \) and \( d([x_i],[x_f'v]) \) are undefined for all \( x_i \), since \( [x_f'v]=[x_f'v]=\emptyset \). Fortunately, if any correct instance state, \( x_f' \), was not seemingly valid with respect to itself, then this would contradict our assumption that a data
memory state containing no errors is valid, since a correct data memory state containing \( x_f \) is not valid. Therefore, we may assert that any \( x_f \) is seemingly valid with respect to itself.

**Example 3.2**

Consider the data memory state, \([x_f]^1\), presented previously in Figure 3.1. This data memory state contains three violations of the Valid State Hypothesis. The first word in node 4 contains the value \(-1\) which, in this example, is the correct node identifier value for \( x_f \) and the second and third words in node 6 contain the value 0 which, when interpreted as a pointer, is the address of the header node of \( x_f \). However, a reasonable algorithm examining \( x_f \) will observe none of these violations. Thus \([x_f]^1\) is seemingly valid with respect to \( x_f \).

Now change one pointer in \( x_f \) so that it addresses node 4, node 6, or node 1, producing the data memory state \([x_2]^1\). Then, provided that \( x_2 \) contains at least one of the words (described above) that violates the validity of \([x_f]^1\), any algorithm which transforms \([x_2]^1\) back into \([x_f]^1\), as a result of examining \( x_2 \), can observe that \([x_f]^1\) violates the Valid State Hypothesis. Thus \([x_f]^1\) is not seemingly valid with respect to \( x_2 \).

3.7. Correction procedures

Ideally, a reasonable correction procedure, \( P \), attempting to correct an instance state \( x_1 \) residing in a data memory state \([x_1]^1\), would determine the class of data memory states \([x_2^{cv}]\) that was observably closest to \([x_1]^1\). If two or more such classes existed the correction procedure should report failure, since the appropriate correction would be ambiguous. Similarly, if \( x_1 \) was disconnected with respect to some unknown instance state \( x_2^x \) and \( d([x_1],[x_2^x]) < d([x_1],[x_2^{cv}]) \) then \( P \) should report failure, since the original correct instance might have become disconnected. Otherwise, the erroneous data memory state \([x_1]^1\) should optionally be transformed into the closest correct and seemingly valid data memory state \([x_2^{cv}]^1\).
Unfortunately, such a strategy seems very difficult to implement efficiently, or even effectively. Allowing arbitrary errors to occur greatly increases the complexity involved in determining the nature of those errors. The search for the nearest correct instance suggests that we must perform some form of exhaustive search. In addition, we must use some form of deductive reasoning to deduce when the nearest correct instance may have become disconnected, within the observed instance state $x_1$. Since the size of $x_1$ is objective only with respect to a given algorithm, algorithms which perceive the size of $x_1$ to be large may be more successful at detecting violations of the Valid State Hypothesis with respect to $x^c_2$ than those that perceive $x_1$ to be small. Thus even the notion of an ideal reasonable correction algorithm becomes cloudy.

As an alternative strategy, it seems appropriate to assume that some maximum number of errors, $n$, occurs, and to consider an instance state, $x_1$, correctable if there exists exactly one $[x^c_2]$ for which $d([x_1], [x^c_2]) < n$. The instance state $x_1$ is correctable by a reasonable algorithm if $x^c_2$ remains connected in $x_1$. If all instance states of $X$ containing at most $n$ errors are correctable by a reasonable algorithm, then the instance $X$ is $n$-correctable [118].

Consider introducing errors into some $[x^c_2]$ producing $[x_2]$, and then presenting $H_x$ to a reasonable correction algorithm, $P$. If $P$ introduces no new errors into the data memory space, then $P$ tolerates the set of errors in $x_2$. Otherwise, $P$ is misled by the set of errors in $x_2$. If $P$ can determine the location of an error in $x_2$, then $P$ identifies this error. Finally, if $P$ can identify all erroneous components in $x_2$, which occur in $x^c_2$, and determine their correct value in $x^c_2$, then $P$ can correct the errors introduced into $x^c_2$.

**Lemma 3.1**

$$d([x_i], [x^c_2]) > d([x_i], [x^c_2]) > d([x_i], [x^c_2]) > d([x_i], [x^c_2]) > d([x_i], [x^c_2]).$$
Proof

Since $[x_i]_m \in [x_i]$ and $[x_f]^\nu \subset [x_f]^\nu \subset [x_f]$ the inequalities follow immediately. ■

Lemma 3.2

If $[x_f]^\nu_1$ is seemingly valid with respect to $x_i$, then $d([x_i],[x_f]^\nu)=d([x_i],[x_f]^\nu)$. 

Proof

The proof corresponds closely to the proof of Theorem 4.2.1. presented in [118]. However, the claim made in this earlier theorem is incorrect.

If some member in $[x_f]^\nu$ which is closest to $[x_i]$ is also a member of $[x_f]^\nu$ then the result follows immediately. So assume otherwise. Then every member in $[x_f]^\nu$ which is closest to $[x_i]$ violates the validity of $x_f$. These violations must occur in words belonging to neither $x_i$ nor $x_f$ since all data memory states in $[x_f]^\nu$ are seemingly valid with respect to both $x_i$ and $x_f$. But this implies that these violations can be removed from some data memory state $[x_f]^\nu_1$ which is closest to $[x_i]$, producing some $[x_f]^\nu_z$ which is as close to $[x_i]$ as $[x_f]^\nu$. This contradicts the assertion that every member in $[x_f]^\nu$ which is closest to $[x_i]$ violates the validity of $x_f$. ■

As observed in [118], $d([x_i],[x_f])$ will be less than $d([x_i],[x_f]^\nu)$ whenever components occurring in $x_i$ but not in $x_f$ violate the validity of $x_f$. Thus, the minimum number of changes needed to transform a damaged instance of a storage structure into a correct instance may be less than the number needed to cause the observed damage in a correct and valid instance.

Correction algorithms that ignore observable violations of the Valid State Hypothesis and merely convert an incorrect instance into the nearest correct instance lying within some number of changes of the incorrect instance, cannot always perform correction when the number of errors exceeds half the exact detectability of the storage structure, since under at least one choice of errors the damaged instance is, by definition of detectability, correctable in more than one way.
However, as shown in [118], correction algorithms which convert examined instances of a storage structure into a correct instance by considering how the damaged instance may have arisen in a data memory state assumed to satisfy the Valid State Hypothesis, may be able to guarantee correction even when the number of errors anticipated exceeds half the detectability of the storage structure being corrected.

Lemma 3.3

If $x^c_i$ and $x^c_j$ are contained in $x_2$ then $d([x^c_i]^v,[x^c_j]^v)<d([x^c_i]^v,x_2)+d(x_2,[x^c_j]^v)$.

Proof

Suppose that there exists no $x_2$ which is closest to both $[x^c_i]^v$ and $[x^c_j]^v$. Then since any two members of $[x_2]$ differ only in the components not contained in $x_2$, and $x^c_i$ is contained in $x_2$, any member $[x_2]$ which is closest to $[x^c_i]^v$ must contain words outside $x_2$ which violate the validity of $x^c_i$. But these words do not occur in $x^c_i$, and therefore can be changed so that they violate the validity of neither $x^c_i$ nor $x^c_j$, contradiction. Thus there exists some $[x_2]$ which is closest to both $[x^c_i]^v$ and $[x^c_j]^v$.

Let $[x^c_i]^v_1$ be such that $d([x^c_i]^v_1,x_2)=d([x^c_i]^v,x_2)$ and let $[x^c_j]^v_1$ be such that $d([x^c_j]^v_1,x_2)=d([x^c_j]^v,x_2)$. Then, since the distance function is a metric when applied to individual data memory states [118], $d([x^c_i]^v_1,[x^c_j]^v_1)\leq d([x^c_i]^v_1,[x^c_j]^v_1)\leq d([x^c_i]^v_1,x_2)+d(x_2,[x^c_j]^v_1) = d([x^c_i]^v_1,x_2)+d([x_2],[x^c_j]^v_1)$.

Counterexample 3.1

It is not necessarily the case that $d([x^c_i]^v_1,[x^c_j]^v_1)<d([x^c_i]^v_1,x_2)\leq d([x^c_i]^v,x_2)$. For example, let $x_2=x^c_i$. Then $d([x^c_i]^v_1,x_2)+d([x_2],[x^c_j]^v_1)=d([x^c_i],[x^c_j]^v_1)$ which, as already observed, may be less than $d([x^c_i]^v,[x^c_j]^v_1)$. 
Theorem 3.1

If a storage structure is \( c \)-connected, \( r \)-absolute-detectable and \( n - \min(c, \left\lfloor \frac{r}{2} \right\rfloor) \) then the storage structure is \( n \)-correctable.

Proof

Consider introducing at most \( n \) errors into some correct and valid instance state \([x^f_1]^v\) producing the instance state \([x_2]\). Then, since the storage structure is \( c \)-connected, for \( c > n \), there exists a reasonable procedure which observes an instance state \( x_2 \) containing all of the components in \( x^f_1 \).

Suppose that \( x_2 \) is not \( n \)-correctable. Then there exists some \( x^f_3 \neq x^f_1 \) satisfying \( d([x_2],[x^f_3]^v) < n \) which therefore remains connected in some suitably chosen \( x_2 \) satisfying the above. By Lemma 3.2, \( d([x_2],[x^f_1]^v))=d([x_2],[x^f_1]) \) and \( d([x_2],[x^f_3]^v)=d([x_2],[x^f_3]) \). Therefore, by Lemma 3.3, \( d([x^f_1]^v,[x^f_3]^v) < d([x^f_1]^v,[x_2]) + d([x^f_3]^v) = d([x^f_1],[x_2]) + d([x^f_3]) < 2n < 2 \left\lfloor \frac{r}{2} \right\rfloor \). But the storage structure is at least \( r \)-absolute-detectable, contradiction. Therefore, \( x_2 \) is correctable.

This theorem is similar to Theorem 4.3.3 presented in [118] and reproduced as Theorem 4.3 in [121]. However, the earlier theorem had a procedural proof and required that all nodes contained node identifiers. Because this theorem has a proof which is not procedural, this theorem does not require that all nodes contain node identifiers.

Example 3.3

Consider a standard circular double-linked list, having an identifier component in each node, but no count. Within a non-empty instance of such a structure an arbitrary number of consecutive nodes can be deleted, by changing a forward and backward pointer appropriately. The resulting structure contains no detectable errors, implying that the structure is at most 1-detectable. However, a single error, in either an identifier component or a pointer component, can always be corrected.
In the former case, all pointers appear correct, implying that the identifier component is in error. In the latter case, the erroneous pointer either addresses a node having an incorrect identifier component or, when assumed to be correct, causes at least one node having a correct identifier to become disconnected, in violation of the Valid State Hypothesis. The described structure is therefore exactly 1-detectable and 1-correctable.

Alternatively observe that, when transforming some instance state \([x_f]^v\) into some distinct instance state \([x_f]^v\), at least five changes are required to add or delete nodes from the instance, at least six changes are required to reorder nodes within the instance, and at least eight changes are required to replace nodes within the instance with nodes from outside the instance. The storage structure is therefore 4-absolute-detectable [120], and thus, by Theorem 3.1, 1-correctable.

3.8. Selective correction

Historically, correction algorithms have been required to correct all errors introduced into a data structure under some given assumption about the nature of the errors introduced into that structure. Correction algorithms have therefore been developed that have essentially undefined behaviour when the number of errors encountered exceeds the number for which correction is certain. This is unfortunate, since it avoids the need to address a number of important issues.

What types of error should a global correction algorithm be expected to tolerate? How might a correction algorithm identify the location of these errors and in particular determine when these errors cause disconnection? How might a correction algorithm correct these types of error whenever possible? How might a correction algorithm determine that the assumptions under which it is operating have been violated, and what ought it to do in all of the above cases?

We begin addressing these issues by considering the types of error which a global correction algorithm might be expected to tolerate. Firstly, it seems appropriate to continue to demand that global correction algorithms have no \textit{a priori} knowledge about the cause of errors, and thus can make no assumption about the distribution of the errors observed. Secondly, it seems appropriate to continue to
anticipate that at most some number of errors occur globally within the structure being corrected. It only remains to determine the number of errors that such a correction algorithm should be able to tolerate, while either performing correction or alternatively reporting that correction is impossible. In this latter case, the correction algorithm may optionally correct some of the errors in the instance, but is not permitted to introduce new errors into the instance being examined.

Consider allowing an increasing number of errors to be introduced into correct instances of an arbitrary storage structure. When at most some small number of errors is allowed to occur, which may possibly be zero, all damaged instances remain both connected and closer to the original correct instance than to any other correct instance. When more errors are allowed to occur, all damaged instances may continue to be correctable, because they remain connected and are closer to one correct and valid instance than any other. When further errors are allowed to occur, some new damaged instance states may be created which are uncorrectable, either because they have become disconnected, or because they may be derived from two or more distinct but correct and seemingly valid instances. Finally, if we allow sufficient errors to occur, it becomes possible for damaged instances that were previously correctable to now be derived from more than one correct and seemingly valid instance, and thus to cease to be correctable.

Given that we wish to correct errors whenever possible, it therefore seems appropriate to assume that the maximum number of errors that can occur is one less than the number of errors needed to invalidate the assertion that some erroneous instance is correctable. A storage structure will therefore be considered \textit{n-selective-correctable}, if all instances which are correctable by a reasonable procedure when fewer than \( n \) errors occur in the instance continue to be correctable when at most \( n \) errors are assumed to occur.

Thus, formally, a storage structure \( X \) is \( n \)-selective-correctable if, for all \( x_i \) and all \( x_j \) remaining connected in \( x_i \) which satisfy \( d([x_i],[x_j]) < n \), either there exists some \( x_k \neq x_j \) such that \( d([x_i],[x_k]) < d([x_i],[x_j]) \) or for all \( x_k \neq x_j \) \( d([x_i],[x_k]) > n \).
An *n*-selective global correction routine, when operating on an instance containing at most *n* errors, must correct all correctable instances, and tolerate all other incorrect instances. Typically we will require that these routines be reasonable, and operate on storage structures which are at least *n*-selectively correctable. We will expect these algorithms to explicitly report when correction is not possible, and to further indicate the cause of failure. Failure may occur because the instance being corrected appears disconnected, capable of being corrected in more than one way, or to contain more errors than have been assumed to have occurred. The decision to report failure in each of these cases can be justified on the grounds that it allows a more appropriate correction technique (such as resorting to backups, or more global correction routines) to then be applied.

We now establish various bounds on the selective correctability of an arbitrary robust storage structure, and then discuss how exact values can be determined for specific storage structures. Finally, in Section 3.10, we discuss how these bounds can assist in the development of *n*-selective global correction routines.

**Lemma 3.4**

Let a storage structure instance *X* be at least *c*-correctable, at most *r*-detectable, and exactly *n*-selective-correctable. Then *c* < *n* < *r*.

**Proof**

Since the storage structure is at least *c*-correctable, all instance states containing at most *c* errors are correctable. Thus the structure is at least *c*-selective-correctable. Consider some *x*^c^ residing in a valid data memory state which can be converted into some distinct *x*^f^ by applying *r* + 1 changes. Such an instance state must exist since the storage structure instance is at most *r*-detectable. All correct instances are 0-correctable, since distinct correct instances must differ, but *x*^f^ is not (*r* + 1)-correctable since it lies *r* + 1 changes from *x*^f^. Thus the storage structure instance *X* is at most *r*-selective-correctable. ■
Example 3.4

It seems clear that many storage structures will have exactly the same correctability and selective correctability. To show that there also exist storage structures which are exactly $n$-correctable, $n$-detectable, and thus, by Lemma 3.4, $n$-selective correctable, consider a circular linked list $X$ having $n$ pointers per node, with fixed pointer distances $(d_1, d_2, \ldots, d_n)$, satisfying $|d_i|=1$ for $1 \leq i \leq n$.

Since at least $3n$ changes are required to reorder nodes within this structure, at least $2n$ changes are required to replace nodes in this structure with nodes from outside the structure, and at least $n$ changes are required to delete or add nodes to the structure the structure is $(n-1)$-detectable, by Theorem 8 of [120].

Now consider the minimum number of changes needed to transform an arbitrary correct and valid instance state $[x^r_1]_r$, into a distinct correct and valid instance state $[x^r_2]_r$. At least $2n$ changes are needed to reorder or replace nodes in $[x^r_1]_r$ as justified above. However, at least $2n$ changes are now also needed to add nodes to or delete nodes from $[x^r_1]_r$. The structure is therefore $(2n-1)$-absolute-detectable. Since $n$ pointers address each node, the structure is $(n-1)$-connected. The structure is therefore, by Theorem 3.1, $(n-1)$-correctable.

Theorem 3.2

If a storage structure is $r$-detectable, and $n = \left\lceil r/2 \right\rceil$, then the structure is at least $n$-selective-correctable.

Proof

Consider a correct and valid data memory state, $[x^r_1]_r$, which has been transformed into a corrupt data memory state, $[x^r_2]_1$, by applying at most $n-1$ changes, and assume that $x_2$ is correctable.

Then, since the storage structure is $r$-detectable, $d([x^r_1]'_r,[x^r_2]_1) + d([x^r_2]_1,[x^r_1]_r) \geq d([x^r_1]'_r,[x^r_1]_r) \geq r+1$, for all $x_2 \neq x_1$. Thus, $d([x^r_2]_1,[x^r_1]_r) > d([x^r_1]'_r,[x^r_1]_r) - d([x^r_1]'_r,[x^r_2]_1) > (r+1) - (n-1) = r+2 - \left\lceil r/2 \right\rceil = \left\lceil r/2 \right\rceil + 2 > n$. 


for all \( [x_f^y] \neq [x_f^y] \). Therefore, \( x_2 \) remains correctable when at most \( n \) errors are assumed to occur.

**Counterexample 3.2**

It should not be assumed in the above that \( [x_2^1] \) is necessarily correctable when \( d([x_f^y],[x_2^1]) < n \). Consider for example a mod(4) double-linked list [40] that has been altered to have two identifiers per node. This structure has four consecutive header nodes, a forward pointer in each node which addresses the next node, a back pointer in each node that points back four nodes, and a count in one of the header nodes within the instance. The storage structure is 5-detectable, and therefore, by Theorem 3.2, 3-selective-correctable. It is however only 1-correctable, since two changes can disconnect a node.

**Lemma 3.5**

If a storage structure is exactly \( r \)-detectable, as demonstrated by a sequence of \( r+1 \) changes to a correct and valid instance state, \( x_0^c \), which produce instance states \( x_1, x_2, ..., x_r, x_{r+1}^c \), and \( x_0^c \) remains connected in \( x_i \), for \( 0 < i < r+1 \), then the storage structure is exactly \( n \)-selective-correctable for \( n = \left\lceil \frac{r}{2} \right\rceil \).

**Proof**

Let \( m = \left\lceil \frac{r}{2} \right\rceil \). Then \( d([x_m],[x_0^c]) = m \) and \( d([x_m],[x_{r+1}^c]) = r+1-m = r+1-\left\lceil \frac{r}{2} \right\rceil = \left\lceil \frac{r}{2} \right\rceil +1=n+1>m \). Since \( x_0^c \) remains connected in \( x_m \), \( x_m \) is therefore \( m \)-correctable but not \( n+1 \)-correctable. Thus the storage structure is at most \( n \)-selective-correctable. However, by Theorem 3.2, the storage structure is at least \( n \)-selective-correctable. Thus the storage structure is exactly \( n \)-selective-correctable.
Corollary 3.1

If a global examination of the data memory space is allowed, and the absolute detectability of a storage structure is \( r \), then the absolute selective correctability of that storage structure is exactly \( \left\lceil r/2 \right\rceil \).

Theorem 3.3

If \( d([x_f]^v,[x_2])<n \), \( d([x_2],[x_3^v])<n \) for some \( x_f \neq x_3 \), and \( x_f \) remains connected in \( x_2 \), then the structure is at most \( n \)-selective-correctable.

Proof

The proof proceeds by induction. In the base case, \( n=1 \) so \( d([x_f]^v,[x_2])<1 \) and \( d([x_2],[x_3^v])<1 \), implying that the detectability of the storage structure is at most 1. Thus, by Lemma 3.4, the structure is at most 1-selective-correctable.

So assume that the selective correctability is at most \( k-1 \) whenever \( d([x_f]^v,[x_2])<k-1 \) and \( d([x_2],[x_3^v])<k-1 \). Consider the case when \( d([x_f]^v,[x_2])<k \).

Consider correcting one of the errors in \( x_2 \), producing the data memory state \([x_4]\), and let \( x_3^v \) be the nearest corrupt but correct and seemingly valid instance to \([x_4]\). This is shown in Figure 3.2 below. Since \( x_f \) remains connected in \( x_2 \), \( x_f \) remains connected in \( x_4 \). Since one of the errors in \( x_2 \) (with respect to \( x_f \)) has been removed in \( d([x_f]^v,[x_4])=d([x_f]^v,[x_2])-1 \leq k-1 \), and \( d([x_4],[x_3^v]) \leq d([x_2],[x_3^v])+1 \).

If \( d([x_2],[x_3^v])<k-2 \) then \( d([x_4],[x_3^v])<k-1 \), implying by the inductive assumption that the structure is at most \((k-1)\)-selective-correctable.

If \( d([x_2],[x_3^v])=k-1 \) then \( d([x_4],[x_3^v])<k \). If \( d([x_4],[x_3^v])<k-1 \) then the structure is at most \((k-1)\)-selective-correctable by the inductive assumption. So assume that \( d([x_4],[x_3^v]) > k-1 \). Then, \( d([x_4],[x_f]) < k-1 < d([x_4],[x_3^v]) < d([x_4],[x_3^v]) < k \), implying that \( d([x_4],[x_3^v])=k \). This implies that \( x_4 \) is correctable.
when at most \( k-1 \) errors are assumed to occur, but not when \( k \) or more errors are assumed to have occurred. Thus the structure is at most \((k-1)\)-selective-correctable.

Finally, suppose that \( d([x_2]_1,[x_3'])=k \). If \( d([x_4]_1,[x_5'])<k-1 \) then the instance is at most \((k-1)\)-selective-correctable by our inductive assumption. So assume that \( d([x_4]_1,[x_5'])>k \). Then \( d([x_4]_1,[x'_f])<k-1<d([x_4]_1,[x_5'])<d([x_4]_1,[x_5'])<k+1 \). This implies that \( x_4 \) is correctable when \( k-1 \) errors are assumed to occur, but not when \( k+1 \) errors are assumed to occur. Thus the structure is at most \( k \)-selective-correctable.

\[\begin{array}{c}
[x_5'] \\
\leq k+1 \\
[x_4]_1 \leq k-1 \\
[x_2]_1 \\
\leq k \\
[x_5']
\end{array}\]

Figure 3.2. Effect of correcting an error in \( x_2 \) producing \( x_4 \)

**Corollary 3.2**

If \( d([x'_f],[x_2]_1)<n \), \( d([x_2]_1,[x_5'])<n \) for some \( x'_f \neq x'_f \), and \( x'_f \) remains connected in \( x_2 \), then the storage structure is at most \((n-1)\)-selective-correctable.

**3.9. Calculating the maximum selective correctability**

While the above results establish bounds on the value of the selective correctability of a storage structure, they do not necessarily identify the maximum value of the selective correctability of an arbitrary storage structure. Often the easiest way to identify the exact selective correctability of a storage structure is to assume that it has the minimum possible value subject to the above bounds, and then to present an example showing that this value is also maximal.
In general, however, the selective correctability can only be determined by carefully considering how successive changes introduced into instances of a storage structure affect the apparent minimum distance between correct and seemingly valid instances. Since this distance is reduced only by changes that disconnect nodes, it is appropriate to assume that changes that disconnect nodes are applied first.

Example 3.5

Consider again the helix(3) multi-linked list. Such a structure is 2-connected, 2-correctable, 6-detectable, and 10-absolute-detectable. Since it is 6-detectable, it is at least 3-selective-correctable. Consider introducing errors into the three pointer components in some node \( N_1 \) in the instance. Since the instance is 6-detectable and these errors do not cause disconnection, these errors can be corrected. However, if it is assumed that 4 errors may have occurred, then alternatively \( N_1 \) may not belong to the instance being corrected, contain a corrupt identifier, and be addressed by three incorrect pointers within the instance which should correctly address a common disconnected node. Thus the structure is exactly 3-selective-correctable.

Now consider the following modifications to this structure. Firstly, we will remove the count, thus producing a structure that is 5-detectable, since six changes can delete an arbitrary number of consecutive nodes. Secondly, we will require a correct structure to contain some number of nodes that is a multiple of three. This makes it harder for less than six changes to disconnect a node and yet produce a instance that is close to some corrupt but correct and seemingly valid instance. Finally, we will artificially increase the number of changes needed to exchange nodes in the instance with nodes outside the instance, by placing 5 independent node identifiers in each node.

The structure remains at least 3-selective-correctable, since it is 5-detectable. However 3 changes can no longer both disconnect a node and be part of those changes that constrain the detectability of the structure. Disconnecting three consecutive nodes, or some multiple thereof, requires six changes, no subset of which disconnects any node. Although one or two nodes can be disconnected using less than six changes, deleting or adding additional nodes so that the structure
continues to contain some multiple of three nodes, requires more than five changes. This is because each node added or deleted contains five node identifiers. Finally, if nodes are reordered, or nodes within the instance replaced by the same number of nodes outside the instance then at least 11 changes are required. This rather bizarre structure is 5-selective-correctable, even though the structure is exactly 5-detectable, and only 2-correctable. Thus it is possible to reduce the detectability of a structure while increasing its selective correctability.

3.10. Using the selective correctability

Having identified some lower (and ideally maximal) bound on the selective correctability of a structure, which is greater than the correctability of the structure, this bound can be used to assist in the development of an \( n \text{-selective} \) global correction routine, which behaves at least as well as historical global correction routines operating on the same structures.

Suppose that an arbitrary storage structure is \( n \text{-selective-correctable} \), and that nodes within this structure contain node identifiers. Consider a reasonable algorithm that is trying to correct some corrupt data memory state \([x_2]_1\). Then, as demonstrated in [118], a reasonable algorithm exists which can (by performing an exhaustive search) identify (whenever it exists) some \( x_f^c \) having the property that \( x_f^c \) remains connected in some suitably chosen \( x_2 \), and \( d([x_2],[x_f^c])=r<n \). Having found such an \([x_f^c]\) it is possible to identify within the subjective set of components forming \( x_2 \), the number of additional changes \( s \) needed to apparently preserve the Valid State Hypothesis when transforming some member of \([x_2]\) into a member of \([x_f^c]\). Thus it is possible for a reasonable algorithm to determine if there exists some \( x_f^c \) which remains connected in \( x_2 \) such that \( d([x_2],[x_f^c])=r+s<n \) [118].

Theorem 3.3 ensures that there exists at most one \( x_f^c \) having the above properties. Thus if such an \( x_f^c \) is discovered, and it is assumed that at most \( n \) errors occur within the instance being corrected, then the appropriate correction involves reversing the \( r<n \) errors that have been introduced into \( x_f^c \) to produce \( x_2 \). It should be noted that the \( s \) components that violate the Valid State Hypothesis cannot be
corrected by the algorithm that corrects $x_2$, since it cannot determine the correct values of components that lie outside of $x_f^v$. However, having detected such violations of the Valid State Hypothesis, these violations may potentially be removed by correcting other instances within the data memory state.

So, suppose that the reasonable algorithm discovers no $[x_f^v]_1$ for which $d([x_2],[x_f^v])<n$. Then the reasonable algorithm next searches for some $[x_f^v]_2$ for which $d([x_2],[x_f^v])=n$.

If no $[x_f^v]_2$ is discovered which has the property that $d([x_2],[x_f^v])=n$, then either $[x_2]_1$ has become disconnected with respect to all correct instances lying within $n$ changes of $x_2$, or no such correct instance exist. Therefore, the appropriate action is to report failure.

Alternatively, if for all $x_f^v$ satisfying $d([x_2],[x_f^v])=n$, $d([x_2],[x_f^v])>n$, then an attempt must be made to remove violations of the Valid State Hypothesis, by correcting other instances, before possibly making further attempts to correct $x_2$.

Finally, if some $x_f^v$ satisfies $d([x_2],[x_f^v])=n$ then the reasonable algorithm should continue to search for some $[x_f^v]_3$ having the property that $d([x_2],[x_f^v])=n$. If such an $[x_f^v]_3$ is discovered then the algorithm should report that the desired correction is ambiguous, before terminating correctly.

If none of these events occurs then the reasonable algorithm has discovered exactly one class of data memory states $[x_f^v]$ that remain connected in $x_2$, having the property that $d([x_f^v],[x_2])=n$. By the corollary to Theorem 3.3, no other $[x_f^v]$ exists which lies closer to $[x_2]$. However, it is possible that $x_2$ may be disconnected with respect to some $x_f^v$, and $d([x_2],[x_f^v])=n$. Thus it is necessary to determine if any such $[x_f^v]$ exists. If such an $x_f^v$ may exist, then the reasonable algorithm should report that it cannot determine whether $x_2$ has become disconnected with respect to the initial correct and valid instance. Otherwise, the reasonable correction algorithm should perform correction by converting $[x_2]$ to $[x_f^v]$. 
Although one might envision reasonable global selective correction algorithms displaying the necessary intelligence to identify when it was possible that some invisible fragment of \([x_1^{cv}]\) has become disconnected in \([x_2]\), it is more efficient to provide these algorithms with some description of the set of \([x_i]\) which lie exactly \(n\) changes from two correct and seemingly valid instance states, exactly one of which has become disconnected in \(x_i\). Typically, either no such \([x_i]\) exist, or there are few types of errors that produce such \([x_i]\) and these have been identified when determining the upper bound on the selective correctability of the storage structure \(X\).

Similarly, it is typically far better to provide global selective correction algorithms with some efficient algorithm which allows them to identify when some \([x_1^{cv}]\) remains connected in \(x_2\), and has the property that \(d([x_1^{cv}],[x_2])<n\) than to require that these algorithms consider the set of all possible sets of at most \(n\) errors that may have been introduced into the instance state \(x_2\).

**Example 3.6**

Consider a mod(2) double-linked list. This structure [40] has two consecutive header nodes, a forward pointer in each node, a back pointer in each node that points back two nodes, a count in one of the header nodes, and a node identifier in each node. Since at least 7 changes are needed to reorder nodes within this instance, at least 5 changes are needed to replace nodes within the instance with nodes outside the instance, and at least 4 changes are needed to delete nodes from or add nodes to the instance, the instance is exactly 3-detectable. By Theorem 3.2, it is therefore at least 2-selective-correctable, and by closer examination exactly 2-selective-correctable.

We will assume that at most two errors occur in an instance state, \(x_2\), and selectively correct these errors by using a number of different correction routines. Each routine will maintain a small table of nodes addressed by pointers in \(x_2\) which contain node identifiers of \(x_2\), but which currently are not known to belong to the instance being corrected. Having accomplished correction, each node remaining in
this table will be considered to contain an error, since it contains an invalid node identifier. Each correction routine will undo any changes applied and report failure if more than two errors are observed by it.

We will first attempt correction using any of the mod(2) local correction algorithms described in [40]. If local correction succeeds then we must ensure that we have not applied two changes to the data memory state \([x_2]_1\) converting it into a member of \([x^c_1]_1\) when \([x_2]_1\) also lies two changes from some member of \([x^c_3]\), satisfying \(x^c_1 \neq x^c_3\). This only occurs if \(x^c_3\) is damaged so that a back pointer in some node \(N_{-1}\) addresses \(N_2\) rather than \(N_1\) and the forward pointer in \(N_2\) addresses \(N_0\) instead of \(N_1\), as shown in Figure 3.3. Correction is therefore aborted if (as a result of performing local correction) we correct a back pointer which appears to point back one node, and reduce the count by 1. Otherwise, since local correction is successful, the correction algorithm terminates normally.

Conversely, if local correction fails then the locality constraint must have been violated, implying that the two errors occur in pointers within a single locality of the linked list which correctly would appear as shown in Figure 3.4.

![Figure 3.3. The instance \(x_2\) lies two changes from both \(x^c_1\) and \(x^c_3\)](image-url)
We next attempt to perform determining-set correction [18] by assuming that the forward pointers are correct, and if this fails, attempt determining-set correction by assuming that the back pointers are correct, as shown in Figure 3.5. Since the count of the number of nodes in the instance must be correct if two pointers are in error, the number of pointers to be followed during these and subsequent correction attempts is known. If both of these correction attempts fail then we know that the two errors occur in a forward pointer and a back pointer. Thus, the errors occur in one of \( \{N_{-1} \cdot b_2, N_1 \cdot f_1\} \), \( \{N_0 \cdot b_2, N_2 \cdot f_1\} \), \( \{N_0 \cdot b_2, N_1 - f_1\} \), or \( \{N_{-1} \cdot b_2, N_2 \cdot f_1\} \).

We next assume that one of two other rather strange determining sets contains no errors and attempt correction using each of these determining sets. These two determining sets consist of the set of back pointers forming a linked list from one of the header nodes together with the forward pointers in the nodes that these back pointers address; and the same determining set constructed using the other header node as shown in Figure 3.6.
Figure 3.6. Second method of constructing determining sets

If this attempt to perform correction fails, then either \( \{N_0 \cdot b_2, N_1 \cdot f_1\} \) is the pair of pointers in error or \( \{N_{-1} \cdot b_2, N_2 \cdot f_1\} \) is the pair of pointers in error and the instance is disconnected. In the former case we can construct three determining sets, one of which contains no errors, and thus once again correct the two errors in the instance being corrected. The three determining sets are constructed by traversing the list from a header node by following a back pointer then a forward pointer and then a back pointer, and repeating these three steps. Each determining set is constructed by beginning at a different step in this sequence as shown in Figure 3.7.

Figure 3.7. Third method of constructing determining sets

If any of the above determining-set correction routines detect at most two errors then these errors are corrected, prior to the selective correction algorithm terminating normally. Otherwise, the correction algorithm reports that the instance being corrected is either disconnected, or contains more than two errors.
The above correction procedure may appear rather cumbersome but can be implemented simply and efficiently. Since local correction and determining-set correction routines operate in linear time, the overall 2-selective correction algorithm also operates in linear time.
Chapter IV

Local correction

4.1. Introduction

In the previous chapter we have discussed how the introduction of a small bounded number of errors into a correct and valid instance might be corrected by a global correction routine, and have shown that a larger (but still bounded) number of errors can be tolerated in some storage structures if we relax the constraints under which a global correction algorithm operates. By requiring that global correction algorithms correctly diagnose the nature of the errors encountered, rather than necessarily correct all errors encountered, we can often construct algorithms that correct a very much larger class of errors than historical correction algorithms, and which, in addition, correctly report failure when some types of uncorrectable errors are encountered.

Unfortunately, the number of errors that can be tolerated by these correction algorithms typically remains small. This is because a small number of well chosen errors can mislead global correction algorithms, simply because the detectability of most robust storage structures is small [120]. However, if we assume that erroneous components are distributed fairly evenly throughout the instance being corrected, a large number of errors can potentially be corrected. It is this assumption which is exploited by a local correction procedure [40-42, 124, 125].

Informally, a local correction procedure visits all of the components of a storage structure instance state, $x_1$, in some deterministic order, by following pointers from the headers of the instance, and corrects errors when these are first encountered. A component becomes trusted once it has been ensured that the component is correct. Errors are identified and corrected by examining previously trusted components, and at most some constant number of potentially erroneous untrusted components. This
bounded set of untrusted components forms a locality which is assumed to contain at most some constant number of errors.

After introducing some notation and terminology, this chapter reviews, revises and expands upon the theory of local correction. It is shown that votes cannot always be used to develop optimal local correction algorithms and that therefore the previous theories pertaining to local correction, which relied on votes, are necessarily incomplete.

The concept of local connection is therefore developed and new results presented which establish lower bounds on the local correctability of an arbitrary storage structure, given that the local connectivity and local detectability of this storage structure are known.

It is then suggested that local-correction algorithms might be able to tolerate more errors in a locality, than allowed for by previous theories, if these local-correction algorithms were designed so that they distinguished between correctable and uncorrectable sets of errors. After establishing bounds on the maximum number of errors in a locality that can be tolerated by an algorithm which wishes to perform local correction whenever possible, we present in Chapter 5 and Chapter 6 two algorithms which use these new bounds to perform selective local correction on various multi-linked list structures.

### 4.2. Local detection

A precise characterization of local detection [20] requires that a storage structure have associated with it a local-linearisation function, $f$, which, when presented with the data memory state, $[x_1]_1$, and the addresses, $H_x$, of the header nodes of a possibly ill-defined instance state, $x_1$, returns a sequence of possibly duplicated ordered pairs, $(w_i, v_i)$. Each $w_i$ describes the node address, offset, and thus word location, of a one-word component in $[x_1]_1$, and each $v_i$ the value of the word representing that component in $[x_1]_1$. In addition, $f$ returns a boolean flag indicating if the instance state, $x_1$, appears correct.
For brevity, since the original notation can easily be recovered, we will abbreviate \( f([x_1], H_X) \) to \( f(x_1) \). Except when relevant, we will also, for convenience, ignore the boolean result returned by \( f \). This allows us to use the notation \( f(x_1) \) to denote the sequence of ordered pairs, \((w_i, v_i)\), produced by \( f \).

Denote the number of tuples in \( f(x_1) \) by \(|f(x_1)|\), and the initial subsequence of \( f(x_1) \) containing exactly \( k \) tuples by \( f(x_1)_k \). If \( k < 0 \) then \( f(x_1)_k = \emptyset \), while if \( k > |f(x_1)| \) then \( f(x_1)_k = f(x_1) \).

By extension, we will use \( f(x_1)_k \) to denote the set of all data memory states in which the words described in \( f(x_1)_k \) contain the values indicated in \( f(x_1)_k \). Thus, for example, \( d([f(x_1)_k], [f(x_1)]) = 0 \), for all \( k \).

An \emph{r-local-linearisation function}, \( f \), when presented with a data memory state, \( [x_1] \), and the addresses, \( H_X \), of the header nodes of \( x_1 \) returns a linearisation, \( f(x_1) \), satisfying

1. Completeness: \( \forall x_1^f, [f(x_1^f)] = [x_1^f] \). Thus, the linearisation of any correct instance state, \( x_1^c \), contains exactly those tuples which represent components occurring in \( x_1^c \).

2. Determinism: \( \forall x_1 \forall x_2 \) satisfying \( f(x_1)_{k-1} = f(x_2)_{k-1} \), either \( |f(x_1)| = |f(x_2)| = k-1 \), or the \( k' \)th ordered pair in both \( f(x_1) \) and \( f(x_2) \) describes the same component. However, the value of this component may differ in the two linearisations.

3. Locality constraint: \( \exists k_f \), such that \( \forall x_1 \forall x_2^c \), either \( d([f(x_1)]_{|f(x_1)|-k_f}, [x_2^c]^{(v)}) = 0 \), or \( d([f(x_1)], [x_2^c]^{(v)}) > r \). Thus, in any linearisation containing at most \( r \) errors, all errors occur in the last \( k_f \) tuples of the linearisation.

4. Detection: If \( f(x_1) \) contains no erroneous components, then the boolean result returned by \( f \) indicates that \( f(x_1) \) appears to contain no errors. Conversely, if \( f(x_1) \) contains between 1 and \( r \) erroneous components, then the boolean result returned by \( f \) indicates that \( f(x_1) \) contains errors.
A storage structure is \( r \)-local-detectable if it has an \( r \)-local-linearisation function. We prove, in Lemma 4.2, that the definitions of completeness and locality constraint presented here are equivalent to the apparently stronger definitions presented in [20].

**Lemma 4.1**

If \( X \) has an \( r \)-local-linearisation function then \( X \) is at least \( r \)-detectable.

**Proof**

Assume, that \( X \) is not \( r \)-detectable. Then there exists \( x^f \), \( x^f \neq x^f \), and data memory states, satisfying \( 1 < d([x^f]_1,[x^f]_1) < r \). If \( [x^f]_1 \) is the original correct data memory state then \( f \) reports that \( f(x^f) \) appears to contain no errors. Now suppose that \( [x^f]_1 \) is the original correct data memory state and that this is transformed into \( [x^f]_1 \) by the introduction of between 1 and \( r \) errors. Then, by detection, \( f \) reports that \( f(x^f) \) contains errors, contradiction. Therefore \( X \) is \( r \)-detectable.

Although it was implied in earlier work that an \( r \)-local-linearisation function could detect up to \( r \) errors in the linearisations that it produced, this was not stated, and does not follow from completeness, determinism and the locality constraint. For example, consider a 1-local-detectable standard double-linked list [20]. Change the structure by allowing the count to arbitrarily contain one of two distinct values. If the count continues to be placed only at the end of a linearisation, then an undetectable error can be placed in the count, without violating the locality constraint. Thus the structure remains 1-local-detectable according to earlier definitions, but is now 0-detectable.

If \( f \) is an \( r \)-local-linearisation function, but not an \((r+1)\)-local-linearisation function, and \( f(x_1) \) contains more than \( r \) errors with respect to some original correct and valid data memory state, then we will say that the locality constraint has been violated. If we assume that the locality constraint is not violated, then all ordered pairs in \( f(x_1)/f(x_1)_{(k_f-1)} \) are correct. All such ordered pairs will be considered *trusted*, while other ordered pairs appearing in \( f(x_1) \) will be considered *untrusted*. The set of
untrusted ordered pairs in \( f(x_1) \) will be denoted \( U_f(f(x_1)) \).

Given the assumption that \( f(x_1) \) contains between 1 and \( r \) errors, it does not follow that a component described in an untrusted tuple of \( f(x_1) \) is necessarily incorrect, or even that such a component is potentially incorrect. Because the ordered pairs in \( f(x_1) \) may be duplicated, trusted ordered pairs may also occur in the untrusted set of ordered pairs. Less obviously, if for some ordered pair, \((w_i,v_i) \in f(x_1)\), all \([x_2^e]_1^r\) satisfying \( d([x_2^e]_1^r,[f(x_1)]) < r \), also contain the value \( v_i \) in \( w_i \), then \( v_i \) is necessarily the correct value for \( w_1 \). This is because we are assuming that the original data memory state contains only correct instances and is valid, and that, regardless of the total number of errors introduced into this original data memory, \( f(x_1) \) contains at most \( r \) erroneous components.

Equivalently, given the assumption that \( f(x_1) \) contains between 1 and \( r \) errors, the last ordered pair in \( f(x_1)_i \) may describe an erroneous component if and only if there exists some \( x_2^e \) satisfying \( 0 \leq d([f(x_1)_{i-1}],[x_2^e]^v) < d([f(x_1)_{i}],[x_2^e]^v) \leq d([f(x_1)],[x_2^e]^v) \leq r \).

**Lemma 4.2**

Given an \( r \)-local-linearisation function, \( f \), an \( r \)-local-linearisation function, \( g \), can be constructed which, for any \( x_1 \) and \( x_2^e \), produces linearisations satisfying either \( d([g(x_1)],[g(x_1)]_{i-k_f}) = 0 \) or \( d([g(x_1)],[x_2^e]^v) = 1 \) and \( d([g(x_1)],[x_2^e]^v) > r \), for some \( j \).

That is, informally, given an \( r \)-local-linearisation function, \( f \), an \( r \)-local-linearisation function, \( g \), can be constructed which produces linearisations either satisfying the locality constraint, or containing some subsequence of at most \( k_f \) components containing more than \( r \) errors, beginning with the earliest erroneous component.
Proof

Assume that the function $f$ operates on $[x_1]_1$. Then the function $g$ simulates $f$, but excludes from the linearisation $f(x_1)$ produced by $f$, any tuple previously emitted by $f$.

The linearisation $g(x_1)$ describes exactly the components in $f(x_1)$. Therefore, since $f$ satisfies the completeness and detection properties so does $g$. The behaviour of $g$ also satisfies the determinism property. If $f(x_1)$ contains more than $r$ erroneous components, then so does $g(x_1)$. So assume that $f(x_1)$ contains at most $r$ erroneous components. Then, by the locality constraint, these erroneous components first occur in the last $k_f$ tuples of $f(x_1)$. Thus, by construction, these erroneous components first occur in the last $k_f$ tuples of $g(x_1)$. Therefore, $g$ is an $r$-local-linearisation function, satisfying the locality constraint for $k_g = k_f$.

Now assume that $g(x_1)$ violates the conclusions of this lemma. Then not all errors in $g(x_1)$ can occur in the last $k_f$ tuples of $g(x_1)$, and therefore, since $g$ is a linearisation function, $g(x_1)$ contains more than $r$ errors. Let the earliest error in $g(x_1)$ occur in the last tuple of $g(x_1)_i+1$. Then, by assumption, $g(x_1)_i+k_f$ contains at most $r$ errors and $|g(x_1)| > i+k_f$.

Remove all errors occurring in $[x_1]_1$ which do not occur in $g(x_1)_i+k_f$, giving $[x_3]_1$, and then produce the linearisation $g(x_3)$. By determinism, $g(x_3)_{i+k_f} = g(x_1)_{i+k_f}$ and $|g(x_3)| > i+k_f$. Therefore, since the earliest error in $g(x_3)$ occurs in $g(x_3)_{i+1}$, this error occurs in a trusted component of $g(x_3)$, even though $g(x_3)$ contains at most $r$ errors. This implies that $g$ does not satisfy the locality constraint, and is therefore not an $r$-local-linearisation function, contradiction.

Thus, the first error in any linearisation produced by $g$ must lie in a sequence of at most $k_f$ components, either occurring at the end of the linearisation, or containing more than $r$ errors.
4.3. Votes

When attempting to develop a locally detectable storage structure, three interrelated issues must be addressed. Firstly, the rules that define the storage structure must be established. Secondly, an appropriate local-linearisation function must be selected. Finally, this function must be shown to be an \( r \)-local-linearisation function, for some \( r \) which, ideally, is maximal.

Although the above activities are in practice inter-related, the task of selecting a promising local-linearisation function, for any given storage structure, is typically not difficult. However, the task of demonstrating that the function is an \( r \)-local-linearisation function, and that \( r \) is maximal for this storage structure, is certainly not trivial.

In [20] it was proposed that votes be used to demonstrate that a storage structure was \( r \)-local-detectable. Let \( V \) be a predicate of three arguments, \( V(f(x_1),w_i,v) \), where \( f(x_1) \) is a linearisation produced by a local-linearisation function, \( f \), \((w_i,v_i) \in f(x_1)\), and \( v \) is a possible value for \( w_i \). Then \( V(f(x_1),w_i,v) \) is a vote on \( w_i \) if, assuming that there are no erroneous trusted components,

1. \( V \) does not examine \( w_i \).
2. \( V(f(x_1),w_i,v_i) \) true implies zero or multiple errors in \( w_i \) and untrusted components of \( f(x_1) \) examined by \( V \).
3. \( V(f(x_1),w_i,v_i) \) false implies one or more errors in \( w_i \) and untrusted components of \( f(x_1) \) examined by \( V \).

The applications of two votes, \( V_1(f(x_1),w_i,v) \) and \( V_2(f(x_1),w_i,v) \), were considered distinct, if either the untrusted components used by the two votes were disjoint, or at least one of the two votes evaluated false. Two votes, \( V_1 \) and \( V_2 \), were considered distinct if, for all linearisations, \( f(x_1) \), all components, \( w_i \), and all test values, \( v \), the applications of the votes were distinct.
An \( r \)-detectable substructure instance with principal component \( w_i \) was defined to consist of the components evaluated by \( r \) distinct votes, when these votes were applied to the principal component \( w_i \). The target components associated with \( w_i \) were defined to be those untrusted components whose correct value could be determined using only the correct value of \( w_i \), and possibly other trusted components in \( f(x_1) \).

It was then shown [20] that a storage structure was \( r \)-local-detectable, if corresponding to every correct instance of the storage structure there was a sequence of \( r \)-detectable substructure instances satisfying:

1. The targets of the substructure instances partition the instance, the size of all such targets being bounded by a constant,
2. The trusted components in each substructure instance appear in targets of preceding substructure instances, and
3. All other components of each substructure instance appear in targets no later than the \( j \)'th succeeding instance in the sequence, for some constant \( j \).

In [126] it was observed that the above holds even if it is only required that votes be distinct in correct substructure instances. This is because we can mechanically test each substructure instance to ensure that the application of all votes within this substructure instance is distinct. If it is determined that this is the case then we are satisfying the earlier constraint on votes, and the above statements therefore holds. Otherwise, since votes within the substructure instance are not distinct, we can conclude that this substructure instance contains error(s), and therefore terminate the linearisation in the vicinity of the first error encountered.

Both of the above results identified sufficient conditions to ensure that a storage structure was at least \( r \)-local-detectable, but neither provided any evidence to indicate whether these conditions were necessary, as well as sufficient. This issue is resolved below.
Counterexample 4.1

It is not always possible to use \( r \) distinct votes to detect between 1 and \( r \) errors in any instance state of an \( r \)-local-detectable storage structure.

Proof

Consider a standard linked binary tree, \( X \), in which each node contains a key, a left pointer, and a right pointer. In our robust implementation of this tree we will ensure that all components are of the same size, and add two additional checksum components, producing nodes which contain exactly five components. For simplicity, assume that components are represented by \( 2^b \) bits.

Partition the five components in each node of \( x_1 \) into \( b \) disjoint code words of ten bits, by selecting two bits from each of the five components, and consider one such code word. Treat each pair of bits from a common component as a binary value ranging between zero and three, and use an arbitrary perfect Hamming code [64, 88] over a Galois field of four elements to checksum the three (two-bit) data values, by using the remaining two (two-bit) checksum values. One such code is presented in Appendix A2.

Then, errors in one or two of these five (two-bit) values are always detectable, while carefully selected errors in any three of these (two-bit) values transform a correct (ten-bit) code word into a different correct (ten-bit) code word [88].

Since errors in one or two components within a node are always detectable, but errors in three components within a node are not necessarily detectable, the structure is exactly 2-detectable. Since we can arrange that our local-linearisation function, \( f \), visits nodes of this instance in some deterministic order, and emits all components within a node when that node is first visited, it follows that the structure is exactly 2-local-detectable.

Now assume that \( x_1 \) contains errors which affect only one code word in some node, \( N_0 \), and further assume that in this erroneous code word, containing five (two-bit) values, all sets of errors in at most three (two-bit) values are undetectable, if suitable errors are also placed in the other two (two-bit) values. Such an \( x_1 \) can be
constructed merely by ensuring that keys are sufficiently variable, and that the data memory state is capable of containing some modest collection of nodes.

Suppose that some vote \( V_1(f(x_1), w_i, v) \) uses less than three components in \( N_0 \) to verify the assertion that \( v \) is the correct value for the first principal component, \( w_i \), in \( N_0 \). Then, \( V_1 \) can examine at most two of the five (two-bit) values in the erroneous code word. Any of the remaining three (two-bit) values can independently be assigned an arbitrary value while being contained in a correct code word, provided that we also change, if necessary, the other (two-bit) values not examined by \( V_1 \). In particular, the (two-bit) value contained in \( w_i \) is not examined by \( V_i \), and therefore has a correct value which cannot be determined, even if the values examined by \( V_i \) are correct. This implies that \( V_1 \) cannot detect some single errors in \( w_i \), contradiction.

Thus any vote \( V_1(f(x_1), w_i, v) \) must examine at least three components. Therefore any pair of distinct votes \( V_1 \) and \( V_2 \) on \( w_i \) must examine at least six components. But, by construction, components not occurring in \( N_0 \) cannot assist any vote on \( w_i \), and, by definition, neither can \( w_i \). Thus, there are four components that can usefully be examined by votes on \( w_i \), and therefore there is only one distinct vote on the principal component \( w_i \).

It is perhaps unfortunate that \( r \)-local-linearisation functions cannot always be developed that employ the existing theory (or theories) of voting. As indicated in [20] the use of votes provides a simple constructive method of establishing lower bounds on the local detectability and local correctability of an arbitrary storage structure. In addition the use of votes assists in the development of clear, concise, local detection and correction procedures.

However, it is important to recognize that not all storage structures can use votes to arrive at a maximal \( r \)-local-linearisation function, and that therefore historical methods of attempting to establish the local detectability and local correctability of a storage structure may not always be appropriate. We therefore present some new definitions, and then proceed to establish stronger relationships
between the local detectability, local connectedness, and local correctability of an arbitrary storage structure than presented elsewhere.

4.4. Local connection

Let the function, $Q_f$, when presented with a linearisation, $f(x_1)$, and the addresses, $H_x$, of the header nodes of $x_1$, return a set of ordered pairs, $(w_i, v_i)$, where $w_i$ describes the location of a one-word component in $[x_1]_1$, and $v_i$ a possible value for this component. We can implicitly assume that $Q_f$ is presented with the appropriate header addresses, and will therefore use $Q_f(f(x_1))$ to denote the set of ordered pairs produced when $Q_f$ is presented with $f(x_1)$.

An $r$-local-linearisation function, $f$, is $c$-local-connected if there exists a $c$-connection function, $Q_f$, and associated constant, $z_f$, such that $\forall x_1 \forall x^c_f$ satisfying $1 < d([f(x_1)], [x^c_f]) < c < r$:

A. Bound constraint: $1 \leq |Q_f(f(x_1))| \leq z_f$.

B. Connection constraint: $\exists (w_i, v_i) \in f(x_1)$ and $(w_i, v'_i) \in Q_f(f(x_1)) \cap f(x^c_f)$ such that $v'_i \neq v_i$.

Thus, informally, an $r$-local-linearisation function is $c$-local-connected if there exists a function $Q_f$, which, when presented with any linearisation $f(x_1)$ containing between 1 and $c$ errors, identifies a bounded set of possible values for specific components in $[x_1]_1$, at least one of which is the correct value for an erroneous component in $f(x_1)$. The function, $Q_f$, may return a number of values for a single component in $[x_1]_1$, not all of which are necessarily distinct, or necessarily differ from the current value of this component.

The (possibly unknown) erroneous components in any linearisation, $f(x_1)$, containing between 1 and $c$ errors, whose location and correct value are recorded in a tuple produced by a connection function, $Q_f$, are called principal components of $Q_f(f(x_1))$, and will be denoted $p_i$. Clearly, $p_i \in U_f(f(x_1))$. It is stressed that this definition of principal component supersedes the definition of principal component
A storage structure is $c$-local-connected if it has a $c$-local-connected linearisation function.

**Lemma 4.3**

If an instance, $X$, has a $c$-local-connected linearisation function, $f$, then $X$ has a $c$-local-connected linearisation function, $g$, having a connection function, $Q_g$, which when presented with a linearisation containing between 1 and $c$ erroneous components, includes among its principal components the earliest erroneous component in the linearisation.

**Proof**

Without loss of generality, assume that $f$ produces linearisations containing no duplicated components. We will construct a sequence of components, $g(x_1)$, using a function, $g$, that is derived from $f$, and then show that $g$ satisfies the conditions of this lemma.

The linearisation $g(x_1)$ contains as its initial subsequence the linearisation $f(x_1)$. If $f$ reports that $f(x_1)$ appears to contain no errors, then $g$ reports that $g(x_1)$ appears to contain no errors and terminates. Otherwise, $g$ reports the detection of errors. This ensures that $g$ satisfies the completeness and detection properties of a local-linearisation function.

So, suppose that $f$ reports that $f(x_1)$ contains errors. Then for each $(w_{l_2}, v_{l_2}) \in Q_f(f(x_1))$ for which there exists a $(w_{l_2}, v_{l_2}') \in U_f(f(x_1))$ satisfying $v_{l_2} \neq v_{l_2}'$, $g$ independently changes the value of $w_{l_2}$ to $v_{l_2}$, producing a new instance $x_{1,l_2}$ and then uses $f$ to produce a new linearisation $f(x_{1,l_2})$. For each $f(x_{1,l_2})$ thus produced, $g$ identifies the set of tuples in $f(x_{1,l_2})$ describing components not already in $g(x_1)$ which occur within $k_f$ tuples of $(w_{l_2}, v_{l_2})$, and appends these tuples to $g(x_1)$, in the sequence that they appear in $f(x_{1,l_2})$. The above process is repeated recursively,
producing all \( f(x_1, i_2 \ldots i_r) \) from those \( f(x_1, i_2 \ldots i_j) \) for which 
\[ \begin{aligned} 0 < |Q_f(f(x_1, i_2 \ldots i_j))| &\leq z_f, \text{ while } j < c. \end{aligned} \]

Upon completion of this process, \( g(x_1) \) contains a very large but bounded set of untrusted tuples, \( U_g(g(x_1)) \), beginning with those untrusted tuples in \( f(x_1) \). In \( g(x_1) \) no tuples contain modified values, since any component modified by \( g \) has already been added to \( g(x_1) \) and \( g(x_1) \) contains no duplicated components. If \( g(x_1) \) contains at most \( r \) errors, then so does \( f(x_1) \), implying that all errors in \( g(x_1) \) occur in untrusted components. Thus \( g \) satisfies the locality constraint for some very large \( k_g \). Finally, \( g \) uses only the values of components already in \( g(x_1) \) when appending new components to \( g(x_1) \), and is deterministic. Thus \( g \) is an \( r \)-local-linearisation function.

Associate with the local-linearisation function \( g \) the connection function 
\[ \mathcal{Q}_g(g(x_1)) = \bigcup \mathcal{Q}_f(f(x_1, i_2 \ldots i_r)) \mathcal{Q}_f(f(x_1, i_2 \ldots i_j)) \]. Then \( \mathcal{Q}_g(g(x_1)) \) contains a large but bounded set of elements. Now assume that \( g(x_1) \) contains between 1 and \( c \prec r \) errors. Then we wish to prove that \((p_0, v_0) \in \mathcal{Q}_g(g(x_1))\), where \( v_0 \) is the correct value for the earliest erroneous component, \( p_0 \), in \( f(x_1) \) and thus \( g(x_1) \).

Since \( g(x_1) \) contains \( c \prec r \) errors, \( f(x_1) \) also contains at most \( c \) errors, implying that there exists some \((p_1, v_1) \in \mathcal{Q}_f(f(x_1)) \subseteq \mathcal{Q}_g(g(x_1))\) such that \( p_1 \) is the earliest principal component of \( \mathcal{Q}_f(f(x_1)) \), and \( v_1 \) is its correct value. If \( p_1 = p_0 \) then the proof is complete. So assume that \( p_1 \neq p_0 \).

Then \( g \) produces some \( f(x_1, i_2) \) in which the error in \( p_1 \) has been corrected, but the earlier error in \( p_0 \) has not. If \( f(x_1, i_2) \) contained more than \( c-1 \) errors, then, by the locality constraint and Lemma 4.2, at least \( c \) of these errors would occur within \( k_f \) components of \( p_0 \). But, by construction, each such error therefore occurs in \( g(x_1) \), as does the error in \( p_1 \), implying that \( g(x_1) \) contains more than \( c \) errors, contradiction. Thus \( f(x_1, i_2) \) contains between 1 and \( c-1 \) erroneous components.
By iteratively repeating the reasoning applied to \( f(x_1, i_2 \ldots i_j) \) to \( f(x_1, i_2 \ldots i_{j+1}) \) we deduce that \( g \) produces some linearisation \( f(x_1, i_2 \ldots i_{j+1}) \) containing at most \( c-j \) errors. If any such linearisation containing \( c-j \) errors included \( p_0 \) as a principal component then so would \( Q_g(g(x_1)) \). So assume otherwise. Then \( g \) produces some linearisation containing only the error in \( p_0 \), since \( g \) produces linearisations while \( j < c \). But \( p_0 \) is therefore a principal component of this linearisation, contradiction. Thus \( p_0 \) is a principal component of \( Q_g(g(x_1)) \).

4.5. Local correction

A local-linearisation function, \( f \), is \( c \)-local-correctable [20] if:

Correction constraint: There exists a \( c \)-connection function, \( P_f \), which, when presented with a linearisation produced by \( f \), emits at most one tuple. Such a \( c \)-connection function will also be called a \( c \)-correction function.

A storage structure is \( c \)-local-correctable if it has a \( c \)-local-correctable linearisation function.

Since there are a finite number of data memory states, \( P_f \) is computable, and therefore our definition of local correctability is equivalent to the apparently stronger definition of local correctability given in [20], which considered a storage structure to be \( c \)-local-correctable if there existed an \( r \)-local-linearisation function, \( f \), and an improvement procedure, \( P \), which could correct at least one error in any linearisation, \( f(x_1) \), containing between 1 and \( c < r \) errors.

Lemma 4.4

If a storage structure has an \( r \)-local-linearisation function, \( f \), and associated \( c \)-correction function, \( P_f \), then the storage structure has an \( r \)-local-linearisation function, \( g \), and associated \( c \)-correction function, \( P_g \), such that whenever \( g(x_1) \) contains between 1 and \( c \) errors, \( P_g(g(x_1)) \) is the earliest erroneous component in \( g(x_1) \).
Proof

By definition, a c-correction function, \( P_f \), is also a c-connection function. Therefore, using the construction described in Lemma 4.3, we can produce a c-connection function, \( Q_g \), whose principal components include the earliest erroneous component in \( g(x_1) \). If \( g(x_1) \) contains between 1 and \( c \) errors, then at each step of this construction, \( P_f \), being a correction function, identifies exactly one principal component of \( Q_g \), and therefore all tuples in \( Q_g(g(x_1)) \) describe principal components of \( Q_g(g(x_1)) \). So let \( P_g(g(x_1)) = (p_0, v_0) \) where \( p_0 \) is the earliest component in \( g(x_1) \) for which \((p_0, v_0) \in Q_g(g(x_1)) \). Then \( P_g \) satisfies the conditions of this corollary.

\[ \square \]

Theorem 4.1

If a storage structure has a 2r-local-linearisation function, \( f \), that is also \( r \)-local-connected, then the storage structure is at least \( r \)-local-correctable.

Proof

Let the function \( h \) behave exactly like the function \( g \), described in Lemma 4.3, but internally generate all appropriate linearisations \( f(x_{i_1, i_2 \ldots i_j}) \) while \( j < r+1 \). Then we wish to show that \( h \) has an associated \( r \)-local-correction function, \( P_h \). So assume that \( h \) returns a linearisation, \( h(x_1) \), which contains between 1 and \( r \) errors.

Using the arguments given in Lemma 4.3, \( h \) internally generates some linearisation, \( f(x_{i_1, i_2 \ldots i_j}) \), in which all errors occurring in the \( k_f \) components beginning with the earliest erroneous component, \( p_0 \) in \( f(x_1) \), have been removed. In the linearisation \( f(x_{i_1, i_2 \ldots i_j}) \) therefore, either \( p_0 \) must be trusted, or \( f \) must have signalled that \( f(x_{i_1, i_2 \ldots i_j}) \) apparently contains no errors.

Conversely, consider the linearisation, \( f(x_{i_1, i_2 \ldots i_j}) \), produced by \( h \) when \( h \) fails to correct the earliest erroneous component, \( p_0 \). By determinism, the linearisation,
\(f(x_1,i_2\ldots i_k)\), contains \(p_0\), and, since \(p_0\) remains in error, therefore contains at least one error. Suppose that \(f(x_1,i_2\ldots i_k)\) contains more than \(2r\) errors. Then, since \(f\) emits no duplicated components, by the proof of Lemma 4.2, more than \(2r\) errors occur in components lying not more than \(k_f\) components ahead of \(p_0\) within \(f(x_1,i_2\ldots i_k)\). Since the function, \(h\), introduces at most \(r\) errors into any linearisation that it produces, by construction, more than \(r\) errors in \(f(x_1,i_2\ldots i_k)\) also exist in \(h(x_1)\). But \(h(x_1)\) contains at most \(r\) errors, contradiction. Thus, \(f(x_1,i_2\ldots i_k)\) contains between 1 and \(2r\) errors. By the locality constraint and the detection properties, \(f\) therefore reports that \(f(x_1,i_2\ldots i_k)\) contains errors, and places \(p_0\) and all subsequent components in \(f(x_1,i_2\ldots i_k)\) in \(U_f(f(x_1,i_2\ldots i_k))\).

Thus, if the function \(h\) produces an erroneous linearisation \(h(x_1)\) containing at most \(r\) errors, then the function \(P_h(h(x_1))=(p_0,v_0)\) mimics the functions \(f\) and \(h\) to determine the earliest erroneous component \(p_0\) in \(h(x_1)\) and its correct value \(v_0\). Specifically, \(p_0\) is the first component that becomes trusted, or is reported to be correct, in some \(f(x_1,i_2\ldots i_k)\) once \(h\) has modified it, and \(v_0\) is its modified and now correct value. Since the function \(P_h(h(x_1))\) exists, the structures on which \(f\) operate are \(r\)-local-correctable.

\[\Box\]

**Example 4.1**

Consider a circular regular multi-linked list having \(f \geq 0\) forward pointers in each node which address the next node, \(0 < b < f\) back pointers in each node which address the previous node, and a single header. Any number of consecutive data nodes in such a structure can be deleted by applying \(f+b\) changes. Thus the local detectability of the structure is at most \(f+b-1\).

Assume that a local correction procedure is traversing this multi-linked list forwards and has arrived at node \(N_0\), and wishes to identify the node, \(N_1\), which follows \(N_0\). Let the current set of untrusted components consist of all forward pointers in \(N_0\), and the back pointers in the nodes addressed by these forward
pointers. Then, provided that the Valid State Hypothesis holds, any set of at most $f+b-1$ errors in this locality is detectable, implying that the structure is exactly $(f+b-1)$-local-detectable.

Since $N_1$ is addressed by some forward pointer within the locality, unless all forward pointers in $N_0$ are damaged, the linearisation is $f-1>(f+b-1)/2$ local-connected. Therefore, by Theorem 4.1, the linearisation is at least \( \left\lfloor \frac{(f+b-1)}{2} \right\rfloor = \left\lfloor \frac{(f+b)}{2} \right\rfloor - 1 \) locally correctable.

However, it does not follow that this linearisation is at most \( \left\lfloor \frac{(f+b)}{2} \right\rfloor - 1 \) locally-correctable. Suppose that an arbitrary locality contains at most $n < f$ errors. Then, since $f$ is $(f-1)$-local-connected, the node, $N_1$, that follows $N_0$ must be addressed by some correct pointer in the locality being corrected.

Let the local correction algorithm consider the possibility that each node addressed by a forward pointer in $N_0$ is $N_1$. When the local correction algorithm correctly guesses that $N_1$ follows $N_0$, it will observe at most $n$ errors in the locality being examined, since the locality contains at most $n$ errors. Now suppose that the local correction algorithm erroneously guesses that some node $N_x$ follows $N_0$. Then all forward pointers in $N_0$, all back pointers in $N_1$, and all back pointers in $N_x$ occur in the locality being examined, and by the Valid State Hypothesis, now appear incorrect unless they contain errors. This is shown in Figure 4.1. Thus the local correction algorithm will conclude that the locality contains at least $2b+f-n$ errors.

Now eliminate any possible ambiguity about the node that correctly follows $N_0$, in a linearisation containing at most $n$ errors, by requiring that $n$ be the largest value satisfying $n < 2b + f - n$, or equivalently $n < b + \left\lceil \frac{f}{2} \right\rceil$. Then $N_1$ can always be uniquely identified. The storage structure is therefore exactly $\min(f, b + \left\lceil \frac{f}{2} \right\rceil) - 1$ locally correctable. Thus when $f > 2b$ the local correctability of this storage structure will exceed half the local detectability of this storage structure by at least $\left\lfloor \frac{b}{2} \right\rfloor$. 
The above example demonstrates that we can design storage structures whose local correctability exceeds half the detectability of the same storage structure by an arbitrary amount. In Chapter 7 it is shown that a robust AVL tree exists, whose detectability, local detectability, correctability, and local correctability are all equal. Collectively, these examples demonstrate that the Valid State Hypothesis can have a profound effect on the relationship between the local detectability and local correctability of an arbitrary storage structure. Much which was stressed in Chapter 3 should therefore be reiterated here.

**Theorem 4.2**

If an $r$-local-linearisation function, $f$, has a $c$-local-correction function, $P_f$, and produces linearisations, $f(x_1)$, which occur as the initial subsequence of linearisations, $g(x_1)$, produced by an $r$-local-linearisation function, $g$, then $g$ has the $c$-local-correction function $P_g(g(x_1))=P_f(f(x_1))$. Therefore, $g$ is a $c$-local-correctable linearisation function.

**Proof**

Suppose that $g(x_1)$ contains between 1 and $c$ errors. Then, since $f(x_1)$ is contained in $g(x_1)$, $f(x_1)$ contains at most $c$ errors. By determinism and completeness, if $f(x_1)$ contains no errors then $x_1 \in x^c$, implying that $g(x_1)$ contains no
errors, contradiction. Thus \( f(x_1) \) contains between 1 and \( c \) errors. Therefore, since \( f \) is \( c \)-local-correctable, let \( P_f(f(x_1)) = (w_1, v_1) \).

Define \( A \subseteq [x^c]^v \) so that \([x^c]^v \in A \) if and only if \( d([f(x_1)],[x^c]^v) < c \). Then the component \( w_1 \) has the value \( v_1 \) in all \([x^c]^v \in A \), but has value \( v_1' \neq v_1 \) in both \( f(x_1) \) and \( g(x_1) \).

Since \( g(x_1) \) contains at most \( c \) errors, there exists at least one \([x^c]^v \) satisfying \( d([g(x_1)],[x^c]^v) < c \). Since \( d([f(x_1)],[x^c]^v) < d([g(x_1)],[x^c]^v) \) all such \([x^c]^v \in A \). Therefore all such \([x^c]^v \) contain \( w_1 \) and require that it have the value \( v_1 \). Thus \( P_g(g(x_1)) = P_f(f(x_1)) \) is a \( c \)-local-correction function for \( g \). Therefore, \( g \) is \( c \)-local-correctable.

Earlier in this chapter we have created new linearisation functions by deterministically appending a bounded number of components to erroneous linearisations. Similarly, when designing or enhancing local-correction algorithms, linearisation functions are often modified so that they add a bounded number of additional components to the end of erroneous linearisations. The above theorem is important, since it provides a lower bound on the local correctability of these resulting linearisation functions.

### 4.6. Local-correctable linearisations

A correct linearisation, \( f(x_c^1) \), is \( r \)-local-correctable if \( \forall x_c^2 \neq x_c^1, d([f(x_c^1)],[x_c^2]^v) > r \). An erroneous linearisation, \( f(x_3) \), satisfying \( 0 < d([f(x_3)],[x_c]^v) < r \), is \( r \)-local-correctable if there exists at least one tuple \((w_1, v_1') \in f(x_3)\) and value \( v_1' \neq v_1 \), such that \( \forall x_c^3 \) satisfying \( d([f(x_3)],[x_c^3]^v)) < r \), \((w_1, v_1) \in f(x_c^3)\). Linearisations having neither of the above two properties are not \( r \)-local-correctable.
Lemma 4.5

A local-linearisation function, \( f \), is \( r \)-local-correctable if and only if all \( f(x_1) \) produced by \( f \), satisfying \( d([f(x_1)], [x^c]) < r \), are \( r \)-local-correctable.

Proof

Suppose that \( f \) is \( r \)-local-correctable. Then, by Lemma 4.1, the instance, \( X \), is \( r \)-detectable and all \( f(x_1^f) \) therefore \( r \)-local-correctable. Further, since \( f \) is \( r \)-local-correctable, \( \exists \) a correction function, \( P_f \), such that for any \( f(x_3) \) and \( \forall x_4^f \) satisfying \( 1 \leq d([f(x_3)], [x_4^c]) \leq r \), \( P_f(f(x_3)) = (w_i, v_i) \in f(x_4^f), (w_i, v_i') \in f(x_3) \) and \( v_i \neq v_i' \). Thus, if \( d([f(x_3)], [x^c]) < r \), \( f(x_3) \) is \( r \)-local-correctable. The converse result follows similarly.

4.7. Local-correctable instance states

An instance state, \( x_1 \), residing in the data memory state \([x_1_1] = [x_1_0] \), is \( c \)-local-correctable, with respect to a correction function, \( P_f(f(x_{1,i})) = (p_{1,i}, v_{1,i}) \), if there exists a sequence of \( c \)-local-correctable linearisations \( f(x_{1,0}) \cdots f(x_{1,k}) \) satisfying \( d([f(x_{1,i})], [x_{1,k}^c]) < c \), for \( 0 < i < k \), where each \( f(x_{1,i+1}) \) is produced from the data memory state used to produce \( f(x_{1,i}) \), after first changing the value of \( p_{1,i} \) to \( v_{1,i} \).

Suppose that a storage structure, \( X \), has a local-linearisation function, \( f \), which is \( c \)-local-correctable, and a correction function, \( P_f \), which can be implemented. Then we can attempt to correct an erroneous instance state, \( x_1 \), occurring in a data memory state, \([x_1_0] \), by using a \( c \)-local-correction procedure, \( \Psi \), which assumes that \( x_1 \) is \( c \)-local-correctable. Beginning with \([x_1_0] \), \( \Psi \) iteratively produces linearisations, \( f(x_{1,i}) \), and while \( P_f(f(x_{1,i})) \) identifies a possible correction, changes \( p_{1,i} \) to \( v_{1,i} \), in the data memory state used to derive \( f(x_{1,i}) \), before producing \( f(x_{1,i+1}) \).
The procedure $\Psi$ terminates successfully once a linearisation containing no detectable errors is produced, and reports failure if it is determined that some linearisation produced by $\Psi$ contains more than $c$ errors. The instance state, $x_1$, observed by $\Psi$ comprises exactly those components occurring in some $f(x_{1,i})$.

**Lemma 4.6**

Given a local-correction procedure, $\Psi$, it is possible to construct a local-correction procedure, $\Phi$, which detects, in those instance states correctable by $\Psi$, any violation of the locality constraint, and which further identifies the subset of instance states corrected by $\Psi$ which are seemingly valid with respect to the original incorrect instance.

**Proof**

Let $\Phi$ simulate $\Psi$. If $\Psi$ reports failure then so does $\Phi$. Otherwise, since $\Psi$ halts, $\Phi$ can identify both the $x_1$ observed by $\Psi$, and the $x_{1,k}$ that was produced by $\Psi$. $\Phi$ can therefore identify all components in $x_1$ which are either erroneous in $x_{1,k}$, or which violate the validity of $x_{1,k}$. Therefore $\Phi$ can verify that all $f(x_{1,i})$ produced by $\Psi$ satisfy the locality constraint with respect to $x_{1,k}$, and that $x_{1,k}$ is seemingly valid with respect to $x_1$.

**Counterexample 4.2**

Even if a local-correction procedure $\Psi$, operating on a locally correctable instance state, $x_1$, produces a correct and seemingly valid instance state, $x_2$, there may exist some alternative correct and seemingly valid instance state, $x_2'$, satisfying $d([x_2],[x_2']) < d([x_1],[x_2'])$. 
Proof

Consider a regular linked list, $x^f_j$, containing two forward pointers per node that address the next node, and one back pointer per node that addresses the previous node in the list. Each node also contains a node identifier. Then, as justified earlier, this storage structure is exactly 1-local-correctable.

Assume that another instance of this storage structure, $y^f_i$, occurs in the set of data memory states, $[x^f_j, y^f_i]^\nu$. Link into $x^f_j$ any $m$ consecutive nodes in $y^f_i$ producing the set of damaged data memory states $[x_1]$. This involves changing two forward pointers and a back pointer in $x^f_j$, and doing likewise in $y^f_i$. Thus $d([x_1], [x^f_j, y^f_i]^\nu) = 6$.

Now consider the behaviour of $\Psi$ when operating on $x_1$. It will observe no pointer errors, and will therefore conclude when examining nodes which correctly belong to $y^f_i$ that these nodes contain erroneous node identifiers. Since each such identifier will be changed by $\Psi$, $\Psi$ will produce an instance state $x^f_j$ satisfying $d([x_1], [x^f_j]^\nu) = m$. To produce the desired counterexample, set $m > 6$.

4.8. Selective local correction

In Chapter 3 we discussed how the theory of selective correction could be applied to global correction, and used as a fundamental concept the notion of a correctable instance state. Having now established the concept of a $c$-local-correctable linearisation, it seems appropriate to explore how the theory of selective correction might be applied to a locally correctable storage structure.

A storage structure, $X$, which is exactly $c$-local-correctable, is exactly $s$-selective-local-correctable if it has a $c$-local-linearisation function, $f$, which produces linearisations which are either not locally correctable, or are at least $s$-local-correctable, for some $s$ which is maximal. Such linearisation functions will be termed $s$-selective-local-correctable linearisation functions.
Thus, informally, if $X$ is $c$-local-correctable and $s$-selective-local-correctable, then $X$ has a local correction procedure which can both correct one error in all linearisations containing between 1 and $c$ errors, and can correct one error in all locally correctable linearisations containing less than $s$ errors, even when it is assumed that these linearisations may contain up to $s$ errors.

If we did not require that $f$ be a $c$-local-correctable linearisation function, then it might sometimes be possible to increase the selective-local-correctability of some storage structures by using linearisation functions having higher local-detectability but not being $c$-local-correctable. While such linearisation functions may be more tolerant of errors, or possibly more successful at correcting errors because they employ smaller localities than alternative $c$-local-correction functions, it seems intuitively appealing that $s$-selective-local-correctable linearisation functions, also be $c$-local-correctable linearisation functions.

Typically, selective-local-correction algorithms will use linearisation functions which have larger localities than linearisation functions used by historical local-correction algorithms, but these selective-local-correction algorithms will be able to correct more errors in these larger localities than historical correction algorithms. Because of these differences, it should be clear that not all errors correctable by a $c$-local-correction procedure are necessarily correctable by an $s$-selective-local-correction procedure. Indeed, since different algorithms may employ different local-linearisation functions to assist in performing correction, different $s$-selective-local-correction algorithms may have very different characteristics when operating on the same erroneous instance state. Obviously, however, our goal is to produce good selective-local-correction procedures which correct a larger percentage of errors than corresponding local-correction procedures.

**Lemma 4.7**

If an instance, $X$, is at least $c$-local-correctable, at most $r$-detectable, and exactly $s$-selective-local-correctable then $c < s < r$. 

Proof

Since \( X \) is at least \( c \)-local-correctable, there exists a local-linearisation function, \( f \), whose linearisations, when containing less than \( c \) errors, are \( c \)-local-correctable. Therefore, \( s \geq c \). Since \( X \) is at most \( r \)-detectable, there exists \( x_f^1 \) and \( x_f^2 \neq x_f^1 \) satisfying \( d([x_f^1],[x_f^2]) \leq r+1 \). The linearisation \( f(x_f^1) \) is trivially 0-local-correctable, but, by the above, not \( (r+1) \)-local-correctable. Therefore \( s \leq r \). ■

Regrettably, we have been unable to prove that the local detectability of a storage structure is at least equal to the selective-local-correctability. Consider, for example, a storage structure which is 0-local-correctable, \( r \)-local-detectable and \( (r+1) \)-detectable. Then, by the above definitions, correct linearisations are \( (r+1) \)-local-correctable. If no incorrect linearisation is locally correctable, the storage structure is therefore \( (r+1) \)-selective-correctable. Even if some incorrect linearisations are locally correctable, it may be possible to ensure, by using the Valid State Hypothesis or otherwise, that all such linearisations are \( (r+1) \)-local-correctable. However, given the typically large number of such local-correctable linearisations, and the requirement that all be \( (r+1) \)-local-correctable, it seems unlikely that such a perverse storage structure will ever be found.

Theorem 4.3

If a storage structure, \( X \), has an \( r \)-local-linearisation function, \( f \), and associated \( c \)-local-correction function, \( P_f \), then the storage structure has an \( r \)-local-linearisation function, \( h \), and associated \( c \)-local correction function, \( P_h \), such that all \( c \)-local-correctable linearisations produced by \( h \) are also \( (r-c) \)-local-correctable.

Proof

Select some \( r \)-local-linearisation function, \( f \), which is \( c \)-local-correctable, and without loss of generality assume that \( f \) emits no duplicate components. Construct the \( c \)-local-correctable \( r \)-linearisation function, \( h(x_1) \), from the \( r \)-local-linearisation function \( f \), by using the correction function, \( P_f \), and the sequence of linearisations \( f(x_1,0), f(x_1,1), \ldots, f(x_1,m) \), where \( m \leq c \), as described in the proof of Theorem 4.1.
Thus, while \( m \leq c \), the construction continues until some \( f(x_{1,m}) \) is produced in which the earliest modified ordered pair \( P_h(h(x_1)) = (p_0, v_0) \) is either trusted, or occurs in the last \( k_f \) tuples of a linearisation containing no detectable errors. Denote the initial subsequence of \( f(x_{1,m}) \) which contains \( (p_0, v_0) \) and the \( k_f \) or fewer tuples following \( (p_0, v_0) \) by \( f(x_{1,m})_t \).

Now assume that \( h(x_1) \) is \( c \)-local-correctable. If \( h(x_f^c) \) contains no detectable errors, then \( h(x_f^c) \) is trivially \((r-c)\)-local-correctable. So assume that \( h(x_1) \) contains between 1 and \( c \) errors. Then, since \( h(x_1) \) contains at most \( c \) errors and \( f \) is a \( c \)-local-correctable linearisation function, the construction of each \( f(x_{1,t}) \) is well defined, and therefore \( f(x_{1,m})_t \) is well defined. Thus all components in \( f(x_{1,m})_t \) are contained in \( h(x_1) \).

So suppose that \( h(x_1) \) is \( c \)-correctable but not \((r-c)\)-local-correctable. Then there exists some \( x_f^c \) satisfying \( c \leq d([h(x_1)], [x_f^c]) \leq r-c \), which either does not contain \( p_0 \), or which requires that \( p_0 \) have the value \( v_0' \neq v_0 \). In \( f(x_{1,m})_t \) some ordered pair at or before the ordered pair \( (p_0, v_0) \) is therefore erroneous with respect to \( x_f^c \). Since at most \( m \leq c \) components have different values in \( f(x_{1,m})_t \) and \( h(x_1) \) and all components in \( f(x_{1,m})_t \) are contained in \( h(x_1) \),

\[
1 \leq d([f(x_{1,m})_t], [x_f^c]) \leq d([f(x_{1,m})_t], [h(x_1)]) + d([h(x_1)], [x_f^c]) \leq m + (r-c) \leq c + (r-c) = r.
\]

But this implies that, with respect to \( x_f^c \), \( f(x_{1,m})_t \) contains at most \( r \) errors, at least one of which either occurs in the trusted tuple \( (p_0, v_0) \) or occurs in some earlier trusted tuple. Since this violates the locality constraint, \( f \) is not an \( r \)-local-linearisation function, contradiction. Thus the assumption that \( h(x_1) \) is not \((r-c)\)-local-correctable is false, and \( h(x_1) \) is therefore \((r-c)\)-local-correctable.
Corollary 4.2

If a storage structure, $X$, has an $r$-local-linearisation function, $f$, which is exactly $c$-local-correctable, and $r \geq 2c+1$, then $X$ is at least $(c+1)$-selective-local-correctable.

4.9. Applications

In Chapter 3 we showed that all instances which were $r$-global-detectable, were $\lfloor r/2 \rfloor$-selective-correctable, and that therefore we could safely assume that any instance which we wished to correct contained up to $\lfloor r/2 \rfloor$ errors, provided that we took some care when examining instances that contained exactly $\lfloor r/2 \rfloor$ errors.

We have now produced a corresponding but weaker result, showing that if a storage structure has a $c$-local-correctable $r$-local-linearisation function, then it has an $r$-local-linearisation function for which all $c$-local-correctable instance states remain locally correctable even when linearisations are assumed to contain up to $r-c \geq \lfloor r/2 \rfloor$ errors.

Superficially, the use of such an $r$-local-linearisation function in a correction procedure may seem rather dubious. Although $c$-correctable instance states will continued to be corrected appropriately, provided that no linearisation contains more that $r-c$ errors, such local-linearisation functions are likely to use larger constants to define the size of their localities, and these localities are therefore likely to contain a larger number of errors. Typically, large numbers of errors do not conspire to mislead a correction algorithm, and we would therefore expect such correction procedures to be rather conservative.

However, as with selective global correction, having established that linearisations may contain more than $c$ errors, while continuing to support $c$-local-correctability, we are free to consider how such linearisations may typically be corrected when assumed to contain at most $r-c$ errors, provided that we take care to detect uncorrectable linearisations. If we are able to develop strategies for correcting the majority of such errors, then we are likely to develop correction procedures which perform at least as well as historical local correction procedures.
Unfortunately, the majority of existing robust storage structures are not locally correctable, and of those which are locally correctable many have \( r = 2c \) and thus \( r - c = c \). Among the storage structures which are not locally detectable are the single-linked list \([119]\), the chained and threaded binary tree \([122]\), the \( \text{mod}(2) \) chained and threaded binary tree \([111]\), the chained and threaded B-tree \([16]\), the double binary tree \([95]\), and the robust UNIX file structure \([108]\).

One of the earliest robust structures to be presented was the double-linked list \([121]\), and this is 1-selective-local-correctable, since it is 1-local-detectable, even though it is 0-local-correctable. However, erroneous pointers are often not correctable, and therefore any selective local correction algorithm operating on an erroneous instance of this structure will, at best, tend to correct only identifiers and the count.

Out of the small collection of existing locally correctable storage structures, many have the same local-correctability and selective-local-correctability. These structures include the \( \text{mod}(2) \) linked list \([119]\), the locally correctable B-tree \([124]\), the checksummed binary tree presented in Counterexample 4.1, and the locally correctable AVL Tree presented in Chapter 7.

Fortunately, there are families of robust storage structures which are exactly \( c \)-local-correctable, and which have \( s \)-selective-local-correction algorithms which can correct almost all linearisations containing at most \( s = r - c = c + 1 \) errors. Indeed, some of the structures presented in the next two chapters are always \( (c+1) \)-local-correctable, unless the instance state being corrected has become disconnected.
Chapter V

Correcting mod(k) linked lists

5.1. Regular linked lists

Regular linked lists form a very important class of robust storage structures for many reasons. They are easily described, implemented, and analyzed, and for this reason the properties of robust linked lists are, for the most part, well understood. Because regular linked lists are well understood, it is typically easy to find linked lists which satisfy predefined properties, and this makes them ideal candidates for both example, and counterexample.

The organization of pointers within a regular linked list can be described by a vector of pointer distances, since any pointer in any node of a regular linked list correctly points forwards or backwards the same distance as any pointer occurring at the same offset in any other node within the structure. For conciseness and clarity, in this and subsequent chapters, we will therefore describe the organization of the pointers of a regular linked list by means of a vector. A single-linked list therefore has a 
\((+1)\) pointer structure, while the mod(2) structure presented at the end of chapter 3 has a 
\((+1,-2)\) pointer structure.

Since we assume that errors affect independent components, the physical ordering of pointers within nodes is irrelevant. For definiteness, we may imagine that pointers occur in nodes in the order that they are defined within the vector describing the pointer structure. Similarly, since we are uninterested in the data contained in an arbitrary regular linked list, reversing the sign of all values in a vector describing the pointer structure produces a regular linked list structure which is essentially unchanged. However, once again for the sake of definiteness, we will consider positive pointer distances to point forward the specified number of nodes, and negative pointer distances to point back the specified number of nodes.
Most of the material presented in this chapter has already been published [40].

5.2. The mod(k) linked list

A modified(k), or mod(k), linked list storage structure [14, 15, 111] is a circular double-linked list of nodes, in which each node contains a forward pointer that links it to the next node, and a back pointer that links it to the $k$'th previous node. A particular instance of a mod(k) structure consists of $k$ consecutive header nodes, whose addresses are known, and all nodes reachable by following pointers from these header nodes. These header nodes are contained within the double-linked list of nodes, and are the only nodes in the instance when the instance is empty. Each node within an instance contains an identifier whose value uniquely identifies the instance to which the node belongs. A count of the number of non-header nodes within an instance is stored in one of the header nodes of the instance. An error is an incorrect value in a single pointer, identifier, or count component [119].

The mod(1) double-linked list is 2-global detectable, 1-global correctable [119, 120], but not 1-local-correctable [20]. Since the structure is 1-local-detectable, it is 1-selective-local-correctable. However, this observation is of little practical value, since selective-local-correction algorithms will tend to correct only errors in node identifiers and the count.

The mod(2) regular linked list is 3-global-detectable, 1-global correctable, 2-selective-global correctable, 2-local-detectable, 1-local-correctable, and 1-selective-local-correctable. It can be corrected by using the selective-global-correction algorithm presented in Chapter 3, or by using at least three seemingly different 1-local-correction algorithms [20, 40, 122]. In [125] it has been shown that local correction algorithms operating on mod($k \geq 2$) structures can also perform crash recovery.

A mod($k \geq 3$) linked list, while remaining exactly 1-local-correctable, is 3-local-detectable, and thus 2-selective-local-correctable.

We now develop, by stages, an algorithm which is proven to perform 2-selective-local-correction on mod($k \geq 3$) linked lists. When operating on mod($k \geq 4$) linked lists, this algorithm either corrects up to two errors in a single correction
locality, or reports that the two errors in the locality have disconnected the instance being corrected. In a mod(3) linked list one other pair of errors in a single correction locality cannot be corrected.

This algorithm, like its predecessors, proceeds backwards from the header nodes of the mod($k \geq 3$) instance state, iteratively attempting to identify the correct address of the previous node. This previous node is called the target. Because the algorithm performs 2-selective-local-correction, we will subsequently assume that this algorithm encounters at most two errors in any locality examined by it. We will also assume that the Valid State Hypothesis holds. Pseudocode for this algorithm is presented in Appendix B1.

5.3. Terminology

Nodes will be labelled $N$ and subscripted by the correct forward distance from them to the last trusted node. The last trusted node is therefore $N_0$, while earlier trusted nodes have negative subscripts. The target node is always $N_1$.

Back pointers will be labelled $b$ and forward pointers $f$ with subscripts indicating the correct distance spanned by these pointers. Pointers will be prefixed by the node in which they reside, or, by extension, a path that addresses them. When appropriate, superscripts will indicate the number of consecutive occurrences of a pointer type within a path. $N_x \cdot b_k/N_x+k \cdot f_1$ represents exactly one of $N_x \cdot b_k$ and $N_{x+k} \cdot f_1$. Figure 5.1 illustrates this notation, by showing a locality in a mod($k$) list.

![Figure 5.1. A correct mod($k$) locality](image-url)
When explicitly discussing the $k$ header nodes these will be labelled $H$. In a correct instance $H_i \cdot f_1 = H_{i-1}$ for $0 < i < k$. If the instance is not empty then $H_0 \cdot f_1$ addresses the first non-header node, and $H_0 \cdot b_k$ the last non-header node. Otherwise, in an empty instance, $H_0 \cdot f_1 = H_{k-1}$ and $H_i \cdot b_k = H_i$ for $0 \leq i < k$. This is illustrated in Figure 5.2.

5.4. Votes

One method of attempting to identify the target is to use votes [20]. In this structure, each constructive vote is a function which follows a path from a trusted node and returns a candidate node, $N_n$, for consideration as the target. Constructive votes are labelled $C$ and distinguished by subscripts. Each diagnostic vote is a predicate which when presented with a candidate node, $N_n$, assumes that this candidate is the target node, $N_1$, examines a path proceeding from this candidate, and returns true if this path appears correct. Diagnostic votes are labelled $D$, and are also distinguished by subscripts.

A candidate receives the support of each constructive vote that returns it, and each diagnostic vote which returns true when presented with it. A weighted vote is a vote which has associated with it a non-negative constant called its weight. The weight assigned to a vote $X$ will be labelled $\bar{X}$. Each candidate receives a vote equal to the sum of the weights of all votes which support it. If the candidate is not the target then it is an incorrect candidate. Votes are distinct if they cannot support the same candidate as a result of using a common component. The following votes are used in performing 2-selective-local correction on a mod($k \geq 3$) linked list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vote</th>
<th>Pointers followed</th>
<th>Compared with</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$C_1$</td>
<td>$N_{1-k} \cdot b_k$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{i,2 \leq i \leq k}$</td>
<td>$N_{i-k} \cdot b_k \cdot f_{i-1}^i$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$D_1$</td>
<td>$N_n \cdot f_1$</td>
<td>$N_0$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$D_{i,2 \leq i \leq k}$</td>
<td>$N_n \cdot b_k \cdot f_{i-1}^i$</td>
<td>$N_{i-k} \cdot b_k$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These votes will be assigned weights later. For notational convenience the set of
votes \( \{C_i : 2 \leq i \leq k\} \), will be referred to as \( C_0 \). Similarly, the set of votes \( \{D_i : 2 \leq i \leq k\} \), will be referred to as \( D_0 \).

### 5.5. Proof of correctness

**Lemma 5.1**

If an instance of a mod\((k \geq 3)\) structure contains at most two errors, it can be determined if this instance is empty. Having determined that an instance is empty, any errors in the instance can be trivially corrected.

**Proof**

In a mod\((k \geq 3)\) instance \( k+2 \geq 5 \) components indicate when the instance is empty. Specifically, the back pointer in each of the \( k \) header nodes points back zero nodes, the forward pointer in the header node \( H_0 \) addresses the last header node \( H_{k-1} \), and the count is zero. For the mod\((3)\) structure, this is shown in Figure 5.2. Given at most two errors, the instance is therefore empty if and only if at least three of these components indicate that the instance is empty.

![Figure 5.2. An empty instance of a mod\((k=3)\) structure](image)
Lemma 5.2

If a connected target is always to receive a vote of at least one-half, and any incorrect candidate is always to receive a vote of at most one-half, whenever at most two errors occur in any locality within a mod($k\geq 3$) structure, it is necessary that the voting weights satisfy the following inequalities:

1) $\bar{C}_1 = \bar{D}_1 = \bar{C}_0 = \bar{D}_0 = \frac{1}{4}$

2) $\bar{C}_i + \bar{D}_i \leq \frac{1}{4}$, for $2 \leq i \leq k$

3) $\sum_{j=i}^{k} \bar{C}_j + \sum_{j=2}^{i-1} \bar{D}_j \leq \frac{1}{4}$, for $3 \leq i \leq k$

Proof

Damaging any two of $\{N_{1-k} \cdot b_k, N_1 \cdot f_1, N_2 \cdot f_1, N_1 \cdot b_k\}$ causes the corresponding two votes in the set $\{C_1, D_1, C_0, D_0\}$ to fail to support the target. This leaves only the other two votes supporting the target. Damaging two of $\{N_{1-k} \cdot b_k, N_n \cdot f_1, N_2 \cdot f_1, N_n \cdot b_k\}$ appropriately causes the corresponding two votes in the set $\{C_1, D_1, C_0, D_0\}$ to support an incorrect candidate $N_n$. Since the target is required to receive a vote of at least one-half, and incorrect candidates are required to receive a vote of at most one-half, it follows that any pair of the above votes must necessarily have weights that sum to one-half. Solving gives $\bar{C}_1 = \bar{C}_0 = \bar{D}_1 = \bar{D}_0 = \frac{1}{4}$.

Suppose that $N_{i-k} \cdot b_k$ is damaged, for some $2 \leq i \leq k$. Then the target loses the support of votes $C_i$ and $D_i$. If $C_i$ and $D_i$ had weights that summed to more than one-quarter, the target would be left receiving a vote of less than one-half when $N_1 \cdot f_1$ was also damaged. Since it is required that the target receive a vote of at least one-half, it is therefore necessary that $\bar{C}_i + \bar{D}_i \leq \frac{1}{4}$, for $2 \leq i \leq k$.

Now suppose that $N_i \cdot f_1$ is damaged, for some $3 \leq i \leq k$. Then the target loses the support of all votes $C_i \leq j \leq k$ and $D_2 \leq j \leq i-1$. If these votes had weights that summed to more than one-quarter, the target would again receive a vote of less than one-half
when $N_1 \cdot f_1$ was also damaged. Thus it is necessary that
\[ \sum_{j=1}^{i-1} C_j + \sum_{j=2}^{i-1} D_j \leq \frac{1}{4}, \text{ for } 3 \leq i \leq k. \]

Lemma 5.3

If no more than two errors occur in any locality within a mod(k \geq 3) structure; the instance being corrected is not empty; forward pointers are corrected when this first becomes possible; and votes are modified so that they do not support any of the last $k$ trusted nodes, then the constraints imposed on voting weights in Lemma 5.2 ensure that (1) the target receives a vote of at least one-half, and (2) incorrect candidates receive a vote of at most one-half.

Proof of (1)

Since the instance is not empty, the target is distinct from the last $k$ trusted nodes. Thus, modifying votes so that they cannot support any of the last $k$ trusted nodes leaves the vote for the target unchanged. Since $C_1=D_1=C_0=D_0=\frac{1}{4}$, damaging any of $\{N_{1-k} \cdot b_k, N_1 \cdot f_1, N_2 \cdot f_1, N_1 \cdot b_k/N_{k+1} \cdot f_1\}$ removes a vote of one-quarter from the target. Since $C_i+D_i \leq \frac{1}{4}$ for $2 \leq i \leq k$, damaging any other back pointer in the locality removes a vote of at most one-quarter from the target. Since $\sum_{j=i}^{k} C_j + \sum_{j=2}^{i-1} D_j \leq \frac{1}{4}$ for $3 \leq i \leq k$, damaging any other forward pointer in the locality removes a vote of at most one-quarter from the target. When multiple errors occur in the locality the target loses the support of at most those votes containing errors. Thus if two errors occur in the locality the target loses the support of at most two sets of votes each having weights that sum to at most one-quarter. Since all weights sum to one, the target therefore receives a vote of at least one-half.

Proof of (2)

Suppose that $C_1$ supports an incorrect candidate, $N_n$, which is therefore distinct from the last $k$ trusted nodes. Then $N_{1-k} \cdot b_k$ contains an error. $N_{1-k} \cdot b_k$ is distinct from $N_n \cdot b_k$ since $N_n$ is not a trusted node, and inductively $N_{1-k} \cdot b_k$ is distinct from
$N_i \cdot b_k$ for $0 \leq i \leq 2-k$. Thus an error in $N_{1-k} \cdot b_k$ causes only $C_1$ to support $N_n$. Thus $C_1$ is distinct from all other votes.

Suppose that $D_1$ and some $C_2 \leq i \leq k$ support $N_n$, as a result of both using $N_n \cdot f_1$. Then $N_n \cdot f_1$ addresses the last trusted node. If forward pointers have been repaired as early as possible, at least the last $k-1$ forward pointers in the trusted set are correct, since $k-1$ forward pointers can be corrected in the headers during initialisation. All pointers followed by $C_i$, after $C_i$ uses $N_n \cdot f_1$, are therefore correct. This implies that $C_i$ supports one of the last $k$ trusted nodes, contradiction. Thus $D_1$ is distinct from $C_0$.

Now suppose that $D_1$ and some $D_2 \leq i \leq k$ support $N_n$, as a result of both using $N_n \cdot f_1$. Since the instance being examined is not empty, some other distinct error must exist in components used by $D_i$ in supporting $N_n$, for $D_i$ to use $N_n \cdot f_1$. After using $N_n \cdot f_1$, $D_i$ can follow at most $k-i$ forward pointers. Thus $D_i$ addresses one of the trusted nodes $N_0$ through $N_{i-k}$. Since $D_i$ supports $N_n$, $N_{i-k} \cdot b_k$ must also address this node. No error can exist in $N_{i-k} \cdot b_k$ since two distinct errors exist in pointers followed by $D_i$, and $N_{i-k} \cdot b_k$ is distinct from both of these pointers. Since the instance is not empty $N_{i-k} \cdot b_k$ therefore points back between 1 and $k-2$ nodes. But $N_{i-k} \cdot b_k$ correctly points back $k$ nodes, contradiction. Thus $D_1$ is distinct from $D_0$.

The above demonstrates that $C_1$ and $D_1$ are distinct from all other votes. If $C_1$ and $D_1$ support $N_n$, they contain two distinct errors, and these errors cause no other vote to support $N_n$. In this case $N_n$ receives a vote of one-half, since $\overline{C_1} = \overline{D_1} = 1/4$. If neither $C_1$ nor $D_1$ support $N_n$, then $N_n$ receives a vote of at most one-half, since $\overline{C_0} = \overline{D_0} = 1/4$. Thus if $N_n$ is to receive a vote of more than one-half, it must receive the support of one of $C_1$ or $D_1$, and a single independent error must cause $N_n$ to receive the support of votes that sum to more than one-quarter.

If a single error occurs in a back pointer $N_{i-k} \cdot b_k$, for some $2 \leq i \leq k$, then $C_i$ and $D_i$ may support $N_n$, but no other vote can, since back pointers within the locality are distinct. Such an error cannot cause $N_n$ to receive a vote of more than one-quarter,
since we require that $C_i + D_i \leq \frac{1}{4}$, for $2 \leq i \leq k$.

So suppose that a single error in a forward pointer $N_x \cdot f_1$ causes votes supporting $N_n$ to sum to more than one-quarter. Then it must cause some $C_{2 \leq i \leq k}$, and some $D_{2 \leq j \leq k}$ to support $N_n$, since $C_0 = D_0 = \frac{1}{4}$. Since $N_x$ is correctly addressed by the path used by $C_i$, $N_x$ lies within the instance. If $N_n$ lies outside the instance, and the Valid State Hypothesis holds, then inductively no correct path from $N_n$ addresses a node within the instance. But the path used by $D_j$ in supporting $N_n$ correctly passes through $N_x$ which lies within the instance. Thus $N_n$ lies within the instance.

Since an error occurs in $N_x \cdot f_1$, $N_x$ is not one of the last $k-1$ trusted nodes. Since $D_j$ correctly passes through $N_x \cdot f_1$ in supporting $N_n$, and $N_n$ is not one of the last $k$ trusted nodes, $N_n$ lies strictly between $N_x$ and $N_0$. Since $C_i$ supports $N_n$ but follows only forward pointers after using the erroneous $N_x \cdot f_1$ pointer, $N_n$ lies between $N_0$ and $N_x$, contradiction. Thus no single error can cause $N_n$ to receive a vote of more than one-quarter.

**Lemma 5.4**

If weights satisfying the requirements of Lemma 5.2 are used, then in a mod$(k \geq 3)$ structure damaging two of $\{N_{1-k} \cdot b_k, N_1 \cdot f_1, N_2 \cdot f_1, N_1 \cdot b_k/N_{k+1} \cdot f_1\}$ causes the target to receive a vote of one-half. In a mod(3) structure damaging two of $\{N_{-2} \cdot b_3, N_{-1} \cdot b_3, N_0 \cdot b_3, N_1 \cdot f_1\}$, also causes the target to receive a vote of one-half. The weights $C_1 = D_1 = \frac{1}{4}$; $C_2 = D_2 = 3/16$; and $C_3 = D_{k-1} = 1/16$, satisfy the requirements of Lemma 5.2, and ensure that the target receives a vote of more than one-half in all other cases.

**Proof**

For an error to remove a vote of one-quarter from the target, it must damage all votes with non-zero weights in one of the expressions in Lemma 5.2 that sum to one-quarter. The target receives a vote of exactly one-half when two errors are
introduced into the locality, and each independently removes a vote of one-quarter from the target. Because $C_1 = \overline{D}_1 = C_0 = \overline{D}_0 = \frac{1}{4}$, damaging any two of $\{N_{1-k} \cdot b_k, N_1 \cdot f_1, N_2 \cdot f_1, N_1 \cdot b_k/N_{k+1} \cdot f_1\}$ therefore removes a vote of one-half from the target.

In a mod(3) structure, we require that $C_2 + \overline{D}_2 \leq \frac{1}{4}$; $C_3 + \overline{D}_3 \leq \frac{1}{4}$; $C_2 + \overline{D}_2 \leq \frac{1}{4}$; and $\overline{D}_2 + \overline{D}_3 \leq \frac{1}{4}$. Collectively these inequalities imply that $C_2 + \overline{D}_2 = \frac{1}{4}$, and $C_3 + \overline{D}_3 = \frac{1}{4}$. Thus in a mod(3) structure damaging any two of $\{N_{-2} \cdot b_3, N_{-1} \cdot b_3, N_0 \cdot b_3, N_1 \cdot f_1\}$ also removes a vote of one-half from the target.

Assume that the weights proposed are used. Then the only equations that sum to one-quarter in Lemma 5.2 are those identified above as necessarily summing to one-quarter. Since $C_2$, $C_3$, $\overline{D}_{k-1}$, and $\overline{D}_k$ are each non-zero, the single errors that cause the target to lose a vote of one-quarter in a mod($k \geq 4$) structure occur only in $\{N_{1-k} \cdot b_k, N_1 \cdot f_1, N_2 \cdot f_1, N_1 \cdot b_k/N_{k+1} \cdot f_1\}$.

In a mod(3) structure the single errors that cause the target to lose a vote of one-quarter occur in $\{N_{-2} \cdot b_3, N_{-1} \cdot b_3, N_0 \cdot b_3, N_1 \cdot f_1, N_2 \cdot f_1, N_1 \cdot b_3/N_4 \cdot f_1\}$. The target receives a vote of more than one-half when one of $\{N_2 \cdot f_1, N_1 \cdot b_3/N_4 \cdot f_1\}$ and one of $\{N_{-1} \cdot b_3, N_0 \cdot b_3\}$ are damaged. Thus if the proposed weights are used, then the target receives a vote of one-half only under the types of damage suggested.

Lemma 5.5

In a mod(3) structure, damage that causes $N_{-1} \cdot b_3$ to address $N_1$, and $N_0 \cdot b_3$ to address $N_2$, is indistinguishable from damage that causes $N_{-2} \cdot b_3$ to address $N_2$, and $N_2 \cdot f_1$ to address $N_0$. Thus it cannot always be determined if the target is connected.

However, if the weights proposed in Lemma 5.4 are used, nodes contain identifier components, and at most two errors occur in any locality, then in all other cases it can be determined if the target is connected.
Proof

If all candidates receive a vote of less than one-half then the target must be disconnected, since Lemma 5.3 ensures that the target receives a vote of at least one-half. Conversely, if any candidate receives a vote of more than one-half this must be the target, since Lemma 5.3 ensures that no incorrect candidate receives such a vote. So assume that no candidate receives a vote of more than one-half, but some candidate receives a vote of exactly one-half. Then either this is the only candidate or multiple candidates exist. These cases are addressed separately.

Single candidate: If all constructive votes agree on a common candidate \( N_n \), and \( N_n \) receives a vote of one-half, then \( N_n \) receives no diagnostic votes. Thus either \( N_n \) is the target and both \( N_1 \cdot f_1 \) and \( N_1 \cdot b_k / N_{k+1} \cdot f_1 \) have been damaged, or \( N_{1-k} \cdot b_k \) and \( N_2 \cdot f_1 \) address an incorrect candidate. In either case the identifier field in the candidate addressed must be unchanged, since at most two errors exist in the locality. Thus if the node addressed lies outside the instance this can be immediately detected, and disconnection reported.

Suppose instead that \( N_n \) lies within the instance. Consider following \( N_n \cdot b_k \cdot f_1^k \). If \( N_n \) is the target, then since \( N_1 \cdot f_1 \) and \( N_1 \cdot b_k / N_{k+1} \cdot f_1 \) are damaged and represent the only damage in the locality, this path must either arrive at some node other than \( N_n \), or arrive back at \( N_n \) prematurely. Conversely, if \( N_n \) is an incorrect candidate, but clearly not a trusted node since it receives a vote of one-half, then all pointers used in the above path are correct. Since \( N_n \) lies within the instance, this path must address \( N_n \) without passing through \( N_n \). These tests can therefore be used to detect disconnection when all constructive votes agree on a common candidate.

Multiple candidates: If the target is disconnected and constructive votes do not all agree on a common candidate, then \( N_{1-k} \cdot b_k \) and \( N_2 \cdot f_1 \) must address distinct incorrect candidates or address no node. Since it is assumed that some candidate \( N_n \) receives a vote of one-half, \( N_n \) must receive a vote of one-quarter from diagnostic votes. For \( N_n \) to receive a vote of one-quarter from \( D_0 \), either \( N_n \cdot b_k / N_{n+k} \cdot f_1 \) or both \( N_0 \cdot b_k \) and \( N_{-1} \cdot b_k / N_{n+k-1} \cdot f_1 \) must be damaged. But these pointers are distinct from
$N_{1-k} \cdot b_k$ and $N_2 \cdot f_1$, since $N_n$ is not a trusted node. This implies that three errors exist in the locality contradicting the assumption that at most two errors occur in any locality. Thus the diagnostic vote must come from $D_1$.

For $D_1$ to support an incorrect candidate $N_n$, $N_n \cdot f_1$ must contain an error that causes it to address $N_0$. Since $N_2 \cdot f_1$ is the only erroneous forward pointer in the locality, $N_n$ must be $N_2$. Since $N_2 \cdot f_1$ addresses $N_0$, $C_0$ does not support $N_2$. Thus $C_1$ does. The statement of the lemma has acknowledged that if this occurs in a mod(3) structure, then it cannot be determined if the target is connected. However, for a mod($k \geq 4$) structure in this case $N_{4-k} \cdot b_k$ is consistent with pointers $N_{2-k} \cdot b_k$ and $N_{3-k} \cdot b_k$ if and only if disconnection occurs.

Theorem 5.1

If the conditions of Lemma 5.5 are satisfied, and it has been determined that the target is connected as described in Lemma 5.5, then the target can always be identified.

Proof

If the target is the only candidate, or receives a vote greater than any other candidate, then the target is trivially identifiable. For an incorrect candidate $N_n$ to receive the same vote as the target, both must receive a vote of one-half. Lemma 5.4 has established that the target receives a vote of one-half only if two of \{ $N_{1-k} \cdot b_k$, $N_1 \cdot f_1$, $N_2 \cdot f_1$, $N_1 \cdot b_k / N_{k+1} \cdot f_1$ \} are damaged, or in a mod(3) structure if two of \{ $N_{2-k} \cdot b_3$, $N_{-1} \cdot b_3$, $N_0 \cdot b_3$, $N_1 \cdot f_1$ \} are damaged.

Suppose that constructive votes not supporting the target disagree. Then two distinct pointers used by correct constructive votes must be damaged. Thus either $N_{1-k} \cdot b_k$ and $N_2 \cdot f_1$ are damaged, or in a mod(3) structure two of \{ $N_{2-k} \cdot b_3$, $N_{-1} \cdot b_3$, $N_0 \cdot b_3$ \} are damaged. In the first case the target is disconnected, while in the second each invalid candidate receives a vote of less than one-half. Thus an incorrect candidate $N_n$ receives a vote of one-half only if all constructive votes not supporting
the target support this candidate.

Since $N_n$ is an incorrect candidate it must be supported by at least one constructive vote. Thus one of $\{N_{1-k} \cdot b_k, N_{-1} \cdot b_k, N_0 \cdot b_k, N_2 \cdot f_1\}$ must be damaged. If no other error exists in the locality then $N_n$ receives a vote of one-quarter. Thus a second error in the locality must cause additional votes to support $N_n$ whose weights sum to one-quarter.

Suppose that a second error occurs in $N_1 \cdot f_1$. Then $N_n$ receives a vote of at most one-quarter from constructive votes, since $N_1 \cdot f_1$ is not used by correct constructive votes. $D_1$ cannot support any candidate, since neither $N_1 \cdot f_1$ nor $N_2 \cdot f_1$ address $N_0$. Since $N_n$ receives a vote of one-half, all non-zero votes in $D_0$ must therefore support $N_n$. For this to occur either $N_n \cdot b_k / N_{n+k} \cdot f_1$, or both $N_0 \cdot b_k$ and $N_{-1} \cdot b_k / N_{n+k-1} \cdot f_1$ must be damaged. $N_n \cdot b_k$ is correct since $N_n$ is not one of the last $k$ trusted nodes, and only two errors occur in the locality. $N_0 \cdot b_k$ and $N_{-1} \cdot b_k$ cannot both be damaged since it is assumed that an error occurs in $N_1 \cdot f_1$. One of $\{N_{n+k} \cdot f_1, N_{n+k-1} \cdot f_1\}$ therefore contains an error and is thus one of $\{N_1 \cdot f_1, N_2 \cdot f_1\}$. However, in this case $N_n \cdot b_k$ correctly addresses one of $\{N_1, N_2, N_3\}$. This implies that $N_n$ is one of the last $k$ trusted nodes, which it is not. Thus if any incorrect candidate receives the same vote as the target, $N_1 \cdot f_1$ must be correct.

If $N_n \cdot f_1$ does not address $N_0$, then since $N_1 \cdot f_1$ must, the target can be immediately identified. So suppose that both $N_1 \cdot f_1$ and $N_n \cdot f_1$ address $N_0$. Since $N_n \cdot f_1$ is distinct from $N_1 \cdot f_1$ it contains an error. Since only two errors exist in the locality, $N_n \cdot f_1$ must therefore be either $N_2 \cdot f_1$ or $N_{k+1} \cdot f_1$. $N_n \cdot f_1$ cannot be $N_2 \cdot f_1$ since an erroneous $N_n \cdot f_1$ addresses $N_0$ while an erroneous $N_2 \cdot f_1$ address $N_n$, which is distinct from $N_0$. Thus $N_n \cdot f_1$ is $N_{k+1} \cdot f_1$, implying that $N_n$ is $N_{k+1}$. The two errors in the locality thus occur in $N_{k+1} \cdot f_1$ and one of $\{N_{1-k} \cdot b_k, N_{-1} \cdot b_k, N_0 \cdot b_k, N_2 \cdot f_1\}$. $N_1 \cdot b_k$ and $N_{k+1} \cdot b_k$ are therefore correct, since $N_{k+1}$ is not a trusted node. $N_1 \cdot b_k$ therefore addresses the incorrect candidate $N_{k+1}$. $N_{k+1} \cdot b_k$ however does not address the target, since $N_n$ is not the trusted node $N_{1-k}$. Thus if $N_n \cdot f_1$ and $N_1 \cdot f_1$ address $N_0,$
the candidate whose back pointer addresses the other candidate must be the target.

5.6. Comparisons

The method presented here for improving the robustness of a standard double-linked list requires the presence of one additional identifier component per node, the presence of \( k - 1 \) additional header nodes, and a count component. This storage overhead is typically smaller than that required if error correcting codes are used, since at least two checksum components are needed to protect two data components against single errors [21].

The modification to the distance spanned by back pointers will increase the cost of performing updates in the proposed structure, and an alternative structure having two header nodes, an identifier, a forward pointer, and a virtual back pointer has therefore been proposed [80]. The virtual backpointer in node \( N_i \) contains the exclusive OR of the addresses of \( N_{i+1} \) and \( N_{i-1} \). The true back pointer can therefore be determined by performing an exclusive OR of the virtual backpointer with \( N_i \cdot f_1 \). Similarly, the forward pointer \( N_i \cdot f_1 \) can be verified by performing an exclusive OR of the virtual backpointer with the address of the previous node. This clever modification to the backpointer produces a locally correctable structure which is as strongly connected as a mod(3) structure, and a correction algorithm which is competitive with historical methods of correcting mod(\( k \)) structures.

Empirical results presented in Appendix C1 suggest that the 2-selective-local-correction algorithm presented here is superior to previous mod(\( k \)) local correction algorithms, when applied to mod(\( k \geq 3 \)) structures. The results of using mathematical Markov models, justified in Chapter 8 and presented in Appendix F, reinforce the results presented in Appendix C1. However, since this selective-local-correction algorithm cannot correct mod(2) structures, these other algorithms are still valuable.
Chapter VI

Correcting helix(k) linked lists

6.1. Motivation

In Chapter 5 we presented an algorithm which performed 2-selective-local-correction on mod(k≥3) linked lists. It is naturally of interest to ask if we can develop selective-local-correction algorithms for more complex linked-list structures having k pointers per node, particularly since the spiral(k≥3) structure [20] which has k pointers per node, has been shown to be exactly (k−1)-local-correctable.

A spiral(k≥3) regular linked list is similar to a mod(k) linked list but has the pointer structure (+1,+2 ... +k−1,−k), while the helix(k≥3) linked list has the pointer structure (+1,−2 ... −k+1,−k). It has been shown in [126] that by traversing these structures backwards, each structure has 2k distinct votes on the location of the target node, k of which are constructive. Therefore, as justified in [20], these storage structures are at least (2k−1)-local-detectable. Since 2k locally undetectable changes can replace a node in such a list with one occurring at some distant point in the linked list (which therefore already has the correct node identifier) these structures are exactly (2k−1)-local-detectable. Thus they are k-selective-local-correctable.

The spiral(3) linked list has one unfortunate property. Having elected to traverse a spiral(3) list either forwards or backwards it is possible to insert 3 errors into the list which makes the chosen traversal method fail, even though all nodes can be reached by traversing the linked list in the opposite direction. The helix(3) structure was developed specifically to avoid this problem, and when generalized became the helix(k≥3) structure.
The rest of this chapter concentrates on the helix\(k \geq 3\) linked list, and on developing a \(k\)-selective-local-correction algorithm for this structure. This algorithm, like the spiral\(k\) local-correction algorithm, proceeds backwards from the header nodes of the instance state, iteratively attempting to identify the correct address of the previous node.

Because the algorithm performs \(k\)-selective-local-correction, we will subsequently assume that this algorithm encounters at most \(k\) errors in any locality examined by it. We will also assume that the Valid State Hypothesis holds.

Pseudocode for this algorithm is presented in Appendix B2. Most of the material presented in this chapter has already been published [41].

6.2. Votes

The helix\(k\) local-correction algorithm uses the following unweighted votes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vote</th>
<th>Path followed</th>
<th>Compared with node or path</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(C_{i}, 1 \leq i &lt; k)</td>
<td>(N_{-i} \cdot b_{i+1})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C_k)</td>
<td>(N_{2-k} \cdot b_k \cdot f_1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(D_1)</td>
<td>(N_n \cdot f_1)</td>
<td>(N_0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(D_{1, 2 \leq i &lt; k})</td>
<td>(N_n \cdot b_i)</td>
<td>(N_0 \cdot b_{i+1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(D_k)</td>
<td>(N_n \cdot b_k)</td>
<td>(N_0 \cdot b_2 \cdot b_{k-1})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The node addressed by \(N_0 \cdot b_2 \cdot f_1\) is also considered to be a candidate, even if this node is addressed by no constructive vote. Given that at most \(k\) errors occur in any locality, this ensures that some pointer correctly addressing the target lies within the locality being considered, unless the target is disconnected. Note that in a helix\(3\) structure, \(N_0 \cdot b_2\) is the only backpointer addressing \(N_2\) that is not used by any constructive vote. This is shown in Figure 6.1. For helix\(k \geq 4\) structures other backpointers have this property and can be used instead of \(N_0 \cdot b_2\) if so desired.
6.3. Proof of correctness

Lemma 6.1

If an instance of a helix(k≥3) structure contains at most k errors, it can be determined if this instance is empty. Having determined that the instance is empty, any errors in the instance can be trivially corrected.

Proof

Consider a correct empty instance of a helix(k≥3) structure, shown in Figure 6.2. Since the pointers in a helix(k) structure form a circular multiply-linked list, and an empty instance contains only the k header nodes that define this instance, the $b_k$ pointers in each of the k header nodes point back zero nodes, while the $b_{k-1}$ pointers in each of these k header nodes point forward one node. In addition the $f_1$ pointer in the earliest header node addresses the last header node, and the count is zero.

Now consider a correct non-empty instance of a helix(k≥3) structure. The only component described above that remains unchanged is the $b_{k-1}$ pointer in the earliest header node, which always correctly addresses the last header node. At least 2k+1 components therefore contain values which can independently be used to determine if the instance is empty. Since at most k of these components contain errors, the majority of these 2k+1 components remain correct. A helix(k≥3) instance containing at most k errors is therefore empty if and only if at least k+1 of the above
components confirm this.

Lemma 6.2

If \( r \leq k \) errors occur in any locality within a helix\((k \geq 3)\) structure, the instance being corrected is not empty, and votes are modified so that they do not support any of the last \( k \) trusted nodes, then (a) the target receives at least \( 2k \) votes, and (b) incorrect candidates receive at most \( r \) votes.

Proof of (a)

Since the instance is not empty, the target is distinct from the last \( k \) trusted nodes. Thus, modifying votes so that they cannot support any of the last \( k \) trusted nodes leaves the vote for the target unchanged. In a correct non-empty instance each vote supporting the target uses distinct pointers. Since \( r \) pointers are assumed to be damaged, at most \( r \) votes can fail to support the target. The other \( 2k - r \) votes must therefore continue to support the target.
Proof of (b)

Each vote supporting an incorrect candidate \( N_n \) contains at least one error. If \( N_n \) is to receive more than \( r \) votes as a result of \( r \) errors, then at least one of the votes supporting \( N_n \) must contain only errors present in other votes that also support \( N_n \).

If a shared error occurs in a forward pointer then it must be shared by \( D_1 \) and \( C_k \), since no other vote uses a forward pointer. Since \( D_1 \) supports \( N_n \), the pointer \( N_n \cdot f_1 \) addresses \( N_0 \). Since \( C_k \) shares the pointer \( N_n \cdot f_1 \) with \( D_1 \) it supports the node that this pointer addresses. Therefore \( C_k \) supports \( N_0 \). But \( N_0 \) is trusted and thus receives no votes, contradiction.

The only error in a back pointer that could be shared by votes supporting an incorrect candidate \( N_n \), must occur in the \( b_{k-1} \) pointer used by \( D_k \), since all other back pointers used either occur at different offsets, or originate in nodes that are known to be distinct. This error can be shared with at most one of \( C_{k-2} \), \( D_{k-1} \) and (when \( k \geq 4 \)) \( D_{k-2} \), since no other vote uses a \( b_{k-1} \) pointer. These possibilities are shown in Figure 6.3, Figure 6.4, and Figure 6.5. For this shared error to cause \( N_n \) to receive more than \( r \) votes as a result of \( r \) errors, no vote supporting \( N_n \) may contain more than one error.

If \( C_{k-2} \) and \( D_k \) both use the erroneous pointer \( N_{2-k} \cdot b_{k-1} \), and the instance being corrected is not empty, then \( D_k \) contains at least two errors since \( N_0 \cdot b_2 \) incorrectly addresses \( N_{2-k} \). If \( D_{k-2} \) and \( D_k \) both use the erroneous pointer \( N_0 \cdot b_{k-1} \), then \( D_k \) contains at least two errors since \( N_0 \cdot b_2 \) incorrectly addresses itself. Finally, if \( D_{k-1} \) and \( D_k \) both use the erroneous pointer \( N_n \cdot b_{k-1} \), then at least one of \( N_0 \cdot b_k \) and \( N_n \cdot b_k \) must be in error since they originate in distinct nodes, but address a common node.

Since at most one error can be shared by two votes supporting an incorrect candidate \( N_n \), and then only if some vote supporting \( N_n \) contains at least two errors, \( N_n \) receives at most \( r \) votes when \( r \) errors are introduced into any locality. \( \blacksquare \)
Lemma 6.3

In a helix(3) structure, changing $N_2 \cdot f_1$ to address $N_0$, and the other two pointers correctly addressing $N_1$ so that they address $N_2$, is indistinguishable from damage that causes $N_{-1} \cdot b_3$ and $N_0 \cdot b_2$ to address $N_1$, and $N_0 \cdot b_3$ to address $N_2$. Thus it cannot always be determined if the target is connected. However, if nodes contain identifier components, and at most $k$ errors occur in any locality, then in all other cases it can be determined if the target is connected.
Proof

If all $k$ pointers correctly addressing the target have become damaged then the target is disconnected. Otherwise, since at most $k$ errors occur in any locality, the target is connected, and either supported by one of the constructive votes, or addressed by the path $N_0 \cdot b_2 \cdot f_1$.

If no candidate receives $k$ or more votes then the target must be disconnected, since Lemma 6.2 ensures that the target receives at least $k$ votes. Conversely, if any candidate receives more than $k$ votes this must be the target. So assume that some candidate receives $k$ votes and no candidate receives more than this. Then either this is the only candidate or multiple candidates exist. These cases are addressed separately.

**Single candidate:** If only one candidate $N_n$ exists, and this candidate is the target node $N_1$, then only diagnostic votes contain errors, implying that $N_{2-k} \cdot b_k$ is correct. Conversely, if $N_n$ is not the target, the path $N_0 \cdot b_2 \cdot f_1$ and all paths used by constructive votes incorrectly address $N_n$ and thus contain errors. Since only $k$ errors occur in the locality, each path contains one error and the error in the path $N_0 \cdot b_2 \cdot f_1$ also occurs in the path $N_{2-k} \cdot b_k \cdot f_1$ used by $C_k$. Thus $N_{2-k} \cdot f_1$ contains an error but once again $N_{2-k} \cdot b_k$ does not.

Since $N_{2-k} \cdot b_k$ is correct and addresses $N_2$, it can easily be determined if $N_n = N_2$. Similarly, since at most $k$ errors occur in any locality, $N_n$ must have an undamaged identifier field, allowing it to be easily determined if $N_n$ lies outside the instance being corrected. Finally, it can easily be determined if $N_n$ is one of the last $k$ trusted nodes. In any of the above cases $N_n$ is clearly not the target node $N_1$.

So suppose that $N_n$ lies within the instance, but has an address that differs from $N_2$, $N_1$, and each of the last $k$ trusted nodes. If $N_n \cdot f_1$ contains an error, then this pointer must be used by $C_k$ since each incorrect pointer in the locality is used by some constructive vote, but no other constructive vote uses $f_1$. Since $C_k$ contains only this one error and supports $N_n$, $N_n \cdot f_1$ must both occur in and address $N_2$, as
shown in Figure 6.6. This implies that $N_n=N_2$, contradiction. Thus $N_n \cdot f_1$ is correct. Conversely, if $N_n$ is the target node $N_1$, then since all of the diagnostic votes associated with $N_{n=1}$ are damaged $N_n \cdot f_1$ contains an error. Thus $N_n$ is the target if and only if $N_n \cdot f_1$ contains an error.

![Figure 6.6](image)

Figure 6.6. $N_n \cdot f_1$ being used by $C_k$ to support $N_n$

The pointer $N_n \cdot f_1$ cannot address $N_0$ since it is known that $N_n$ receives no diagnostic votes. If this pointer addresses any other trusted node then it contains an error since $N_n$ is distinct from the last $k$ trusted nodes. This pointer also clearly contains an error if it addresses itself. In any of the above cases, since $N_n \cdot f_1$ is known to be in error, $N_n$ is the target. So assume that $N_n \cdot f_1$ addresses $N_x$ which is distinct from $N_n$ and the last $k$ trusted nodes. Then $N_x \cdot b_k$ is correct since it is distinct from all of the $b_k$ pointers containing errors.

Consider following the path $N_n \cdot f_1 \cdot b_k$, and then $k-1$ forward pointers, as shown in Figure 6.7. If $N_n \cdot f_1$ is correct then none of these $k-1$ forward pointers can be the erroneous $N_2 \cdot f_1$ pointer, since $N_n$ is not one of the last $k$ trusted nodes. Thus all $k-1$ forward pointers are also correct and form a path that arrives back at $N_n$. Conversely, if $N_n \cdot f_1$ is incorrect then $N_2 \cdot f_1$ is correct and thus the path followed must either fail to arrive back at $N_n$, or, in using $N_n \cdot f_1$ more than once, arrive back at $N_n$ prematurely. Thus $N_n$ is the target if and only if the above path appears incorrect.
Multiple candidates: If constructive votes agree on a common candidate, but support a different candidate from that addressed by $N_0 \cdot b_2 \cdot f_1$ then the target is connected. Otherwise, since constructive votes disagree, any candidate $N_n$ receiving $k$ votes must receive at least one diagnostic vote. If the target is disconnected, then all errors occur in pointers correctly addressing $N_1$. Only the diagnostic vote $D_1$ can use one of these erroneous pointers to support $N_n$. However, this implies that $N_n$ is $N_2$, and that $N_2 \cdot f_1$ addresses $N_0$.

The statement of the lemma has acknowledged that if this damage occurs in a helix(3) structure, then it cannot be determined if the target is connected. However, for a helix($k \geq 4$) structure the pointer $N_{-1} \cdot b_3$ is unused and thus correct since $k$ other pointers within the locality are known to be in error. Since this pointer correctly addresses $N_2$ it can be used to determine if the candidate receiving $k$ votes is indeed $N_2$. If it is, then the target is disconnected. Otherwise, this candidate is the target. ■

Theorem 6.1

If the conditions of Lemma 6.3 are satisfied, and it has been determined that the target is connected as described in Lemma 6.3, then the target can always be identified.

Proof

If the target is the only candidate, or receives a vote greater than any other candidate, then the target is trivially identifiable. For an incorrect candidate $N_n$ to receive the same vote as the target $N_1$, both must receive $k$ votes.
Suppose that $N_1 \cdot f_1$ contains an error. Then this error must be used by some vote supporting the incorrect candidate $N_n$, since otherwise $k-1$ errors could cause $k$ votes to support an incorrect candidate, contradicting Lemma 6.2. The only vote that can utilize such an error in $N_1 \cdot f_1$ is $C_k$, and then only if $N_{2-k} \cdot b_k$ erroneously addresses $N_1$. But in this case $C_k$ contains two errors that are used by no other vote that supports $N_n$. This implies that $k-2$ errors cause the remaining $k-1$ votes to support $N_n$. Once again this contradicts Lemma 6.2. Thus $N_1 \cdot f_1$ must be correct.

Since $N_1 \cdot f_1$ is correct we can trivially identify the target if $N_n \cdot f_1$ does not address $N_0$. So suppose that $N_n \cdot f_1$ contains an error that causes it to also address $N_0$. Since it is known that each error in the locality damages a vote correctly supporting the target, the incorrect candidate, $N_n$, must be $N_2$. But in this case the damage to $N_2 \cdot f_1$ implies that $N_{2-k} \cdot b_k$ is correct and therefore addresses the incorrect candidate $N_n$. Thus if both $N_1 \cdot f_1$ and $N_n \cdot f_1$ address $N_0$ then the target is that node not addressed by $N_{2-k} \cdot b_k$.

6.4. Conclusions

The above results are the natural progression of ideas first developed in Chapter 4 and Chapter 5. The helix$(k)$ selective-local-correction algorithm, presented in Appendix B2, is slightly longer than the mod$(k)$ selective-local-correction algorithm, presented in Appendix B1, but somewhat easier to prove correct.

Empirical results, presented in Appendix C2, suggest that the helix$(k)$ selective-local-correction algorithm is significantly better than the spiral$(k)$ local-correction algorithm [20], when operating on comparable structures. This is hardly surprising, since the spiral$(k)$ local-correction algorithm assumes that at most $k-1$ errors occurred in any locality, and therefore makes no attempt to either detect disconnection or to behave intelligently when $k$ errors occur in a correction locality.
Chapter VII

Locally correctable trees

7.1. Introduction

A binary tree is a storage structure which allows rapid retrieval of data. The structure consists of a collection of nodes that each contain two link pointers, and a key. Each node with the exception of the header node is addressed by exactly one link residing in its parent node, and is considered to be a child of this parent node. Obviously, since the structure is finite, some links are unused. These links typically contain some special value indicating that they are null. A full node has two children, an incomplete node has one child, and a leaf node has no children. In a binary search tree the keys within the structure are arranged in such a way that all keys reached by following a “left” link out of any node are lexicographically smaller than the key recorded in this node, while all keys reached by following a “right” link are larger than this key.

Classical trees are not robust. Errors in keys are undetectable, unless these errors affect the key ordering, while errors in non-null links disconnect the structure [119]. A number of binary trees have been proposed that allow a limited number of errors to be detected and corrected, by performing a global examination of the erroneous storage structure instance [15, 95, 108, 111, 123, 138].

In this chapter we will consider what are perhaps the three most widely used tree structures having no previously known corresponding locally-correctable robust tree structure, and will present 1-local-correctable versions of each of these three structures. These structures are in order, the binary search tree, the AVL tree, and the m-ary trie. The 1-local-correctable AVL tree was first presented in [42]. A 1-local-correctable checksummed binary tree has already been described in Chapter 4, and two 1-local-correctable B-trees are described in [80, 124].
All of the trees presented in this chapter have nodes which contain a node identifier, two link components, a key component, and one additional arc pointer component. The arc pointer performs two functions. Firstly, it ensures that the structures containing it are 1-connected. Secondly, it assists in developing structures which are 1-locally-correctable. When key ordering is actively used to assist in performing local-correction, we will ensure that keys are themselves locally-correctable, by placing one additional checksum component in each node.

Nodes will be labelled $N$ and distinguished by subscripts. Each tree will have one header node, denoted $N_H$. Left links will be labelled $l$, right links $r$, and arcs $a$. Arbitrary links will be labelled $c$, and keys $k$. Identifiers will be labelled $id$, and checksums, when present, $s$. Components will be prefixed by the node in which they reside, or by extension the path that addresses them. The symbol $\emptyset$ will be used to denote null pointers.

7.2. A sibling-linked search tree

7.2.1. Description

Let the left link, right link, and arc pointer, in the header node $N_H$ of a sibling-linked tree, all address the root node in the tree. If no root node exists then these three pointers are null.

Consider a full node in a standard binary tree. We can increase the number of paths to each child node, by arranging that the arc pointer in each child node addresses the sibling node.

Now consider an incomplete node, $N_x$, in a standard binary tree. One link in this node addresses the child of this node, while the other is null. We can increase the number of paths to this single child by arranging that both links in $N_x$ address this single child, provided that we either flag the location of the null link in the identifier component of $N_x$, or are willing to use the key in both $N_x$ and the child node to determine if this is a left child node or a right child node. Arc pointers in solitary child nodes address the parent node.
Finally, include in each node a checksum component of the same size as the key component, which will be used to ensure that keys and checksums are themselves locally-correctable. Collectively, the above describes the organization of a sibling-linked tree.

![Diagram of a sibling-linked search tree](image)

Figure 7.1. An example of the sibling-linked search tree

7.2.2. Local correction

Correction proceeds by selecting some node, \( N_x \), which is addressed by a trusted pointer, but whose components are untrusted. By examining a small number of untrusted components, which are collectively assumed to contain at most one error, the correct values of both links in this node can be deduced. These can then be corrected if necessary, as can the arcs in the nodes that they address. This process continues until all pointers are trusted.

Correction is accomplished by guessing that \( N_x \) is a leaf node, an incomplete node, or a full node. When full, we further guess which of the two links is correct. Associated with each of these four guesses are two pseudo-votes, shown in Figure 7.2.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CORRECT</th>
<th>1ST VOTE</th>
<th>2ND VOTE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$N_x$</td>
<td>$N_x$</td>
<td>$N_x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\emptyset$</td>
<td>$\emptyset$</td>
<td>$\emptyset$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$N_x$</td>
<td>$N_x$</td>
<td>$N_x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\downarrow$</td>
<td>$\downarrow$</td>
<td>$\downarrow$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$N_y$</td>
<td>$N_y$</td>
<td>$N_y$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\leftarrow$</td>
<td>$\leftarrow$</td>
<td>$\leftarrow$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$N_z$</td>
<td>$N_z$</td>
<td>$N_z$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\rightarrow$</td>
<td>$\rightarrow$</td>
<td>$\rightarrow$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 7.2. Pseudo votes used in the sibling-linked tree
When guessing that the node $N_x$ is a leaf, the votes are $N_x \cdot l = \emptyset$ and $N_x \cdot r = \emptyset$. When guessing that a node has only one child, the votes are $N_x \cdot l = N_x \cdot r$ and either $N_x \cdot l \cdot a = N_x$ or $N_x \cdot r \cdot a = N_x$. When guessing that $N_x \cdot l$ correctly addresses one of two children below $N_x$, the votes are $N_x \cdot l \cdot a = N_x \cdot r$ and $N_x \cdot l \cdot a \cdot a = N_x \cdot l$. Similarly, when guessing that $N_x \cdot r$ correctly addresses one of two children below $N_x$ the votes are $N_x \cdot r \cdot a = N_x \cdot l$ and $N_x \cdot r \cdot a \cdot a = N_x \cdot r$.

If no errors exist in the locality examined, then a cursory examination of the votes employed reveals that correct guesses will receive two votes, and other guesses will receive no vote. If one error exists in the locality examined, then no guess will receive two votes, and guesses which receive no votes must be incorrect. Therefore, if only one guess receives a vote, then this guess must be correct, allowing the single error in the locality to be corrected. Otherwise, additional effort is needed in order to identify the correct guess.

If $N_x \cdot l$ or $N_x \cdot r$ fails to address a node in the memory space, or addresses the previously identified sibling of $N_x$, then this link in error. Given the assumption that only one error occurs in any locality, such errors can be trivially corrected. It will therefore subsequently be assumed that such errors have not occurred.

Suppose that we add a bounded number of additional components to the locality being examined, when this locality is discovered to contain an error. If the locality constraint continues to be satisfied, then these additional components contain no errors. Thus if any pointer in the locality addresses a node with an invalid node identifier, then by adding these identifiers to the locality, the local-correction procedure can conclude that the pointer addressing this invalid node identifier is in error, and can therefore be corrected. So assume otherwise.

If any of the guesses receiving one vote suggests that $N_x$ has two child nodes, $N_y$ and $N_z$, where $N_z = N_y \cdot a$, then add $N_x \cdot k$, $N_y \cdot k$, and $N_z \cdot k$ to the locality. Since we assume that the locality constraint continues to be satisfied, none of these three keys is in error. Because keys in a binary search tree are ordered, we can conclude that this guess is incorrect if these three keys have an illegal ordering. Such a guess can also obviously be rejected if $N_x$ is the header node of the instance, or if either $N_y$ or
$N_z$ is a direct ancestor of $N_x$. Otherwise, $N_y$ and $N_z$ must be correctly ordered siblings, and this guess therefore correct.

Once it has been established that $N_x$ is not a full node, eliminate any guess that suggests that it might be. If only one guess now receives a vote then this guess must be correct. Otherwise, the two remaining guesses are that $N_x$ is a leaf node, and that $N_x$ has one child. This occurs if and only if one of the links in $N_x$ is null, and the other addresses a node $N_y$, satisfying $N_y \cdot a = N_x$. We have previously ensured that $N_y$ is not the sibling node of $N_x$. Thus, since $N_y \cdot a = N_x$, $N_y$ is the only child of $N_x$.

7.2.3. Correcting keys

Having corrected the pointers in the instance, the keys and identifiers can be corrected by using their associated checksums. It may seem unreasonable to correct keys and identifiers after pointers have been corrected, and yet base the correction of pointers in part on these potentially erroneous keys and identifiers. However, if anything, it is our assumption that no locality contains more than one error that is unreasonable. If this assumption holds, then the only keys and identifiers that are examined during the correction of pointers are necessarily correct.

Initially, when designing the storage structure, some cyclic ordering is associated with the nodes in the tree. One satisfactory choice is to use a pre-order traversal. Such an ordering places a parent node before its left child and the left child before the right child, assuming that both such nodes exist. This particular ordering allows the node following any node to be located simply and efficiently. The successor of the last node in the ordering is defined to be the header.

Let the node $N_{x+1}$ follow the node $N_x$ within this ordering, and let the checksum, $N_x \cdot s$, satisfy $N_x \cdot s = N_{x-1} \cdot k + N_x \cdot k$, for all $N_x$. Thus if any $N_y \cdot k$ is inserted, or updated, $N_y \cdot s$ and $N_{y+1} \cdot s$ must also be updated. $N_y$ is updated anyway, and the above ordering ensures that $N_{y+1} \cdot s$ can be updated by performing one additional probe. $N_{y-1}$ need never be retrieved since, prior to any change, $N_{y-1} \cdot k = N_y \cdot s - N_y \cdot k$. Thus keys and checksums can be inserted and updated efficiently.
Initially, since the key in the header is known, this component is corrected if in error and then added to the set of trusted components. The correct value of each successive key is determined iteratively by using $N_x \cdot k$, $N_x \cdot s - N_{x-1} \cdot k$ and $N_{x+1} \cdot s - N_{x+1} \cdot k$ as votes [20] that agree if and only if they evaluate the correct value for $N_x \cdot k$. Having corrected $N_x \cdot k$ if necessary, $N_x \cdot k$ becomes trusted. Since $N_{x-1} \cdot k$ is also trusted, $N_x \cdot s$ can now be corrected if incorrect before also becoming trusted. Correction is complete when all links, arcs, identifiers, keys, and checksums have been thus corrected.

7.3. A robust AVL tree

7.3.1. Description

In a height-balanced (AVL) binary tree, the heights of the left and right subtrees below any node differ by at most one [72]. An identifier exists in each node which indicates the current direction of any such imbalance in the two subtrees below this node. Because the tree is height-balanced, expected retrieval times are reduced, and worst case insert and delete operation times are logarithmic.

The AVL tree structure being considered will be made more robust by adding additional redundancy to the nodes of the structure. In addition to the height balancing information present in each node identifier, each node identifier will also contain two flags explicitly identifying the location of null links within the node. Each node will also contain an arc pointer. If desired, keys may be protected by associating checksums with them, as described above.

Within a correct structure all pointers in the header node, $N_H$, address the root node if this exists. Links address child nodes as expected, and arc pointers form a cyclic single linked list which links nodes in the order defined by the following node traversal:
Visit($N_H$)
If $N_H \cdot r \neq \emptyset$ { /* Not null */
    Visit($N_H \cdot r$)
    Traverse($N_H \cdot r$)
}

Traverse($N$) {
    If $N \cdot l \neq \emptyset$ Visit($N \cdot l$)
    If $N \cdot r \neq \emptyset$ Visit($N \cdot r$)
    If $N \cdot l \neq \emptyset$ Traverse($N \cdot l$)
    If $N \cdot r \neq \emptyset$ Traverse($N \cdot r$)
}

Figure 7.3. Arc traversal order in the AVL tree

Figure 7.4. An example of the proposed AVL tree
7.3.2. Global characteristics

The structure described above has the following global characteristics. It can be traversed using either the links or the arcs and is thus 1-connected. It can be reconstructed by either using correct links, or by using correct arcs and identifiers, even if identifiers do not contain height-balance information. The structure is therefore 2-determined [122]. We will show that the structure can be corrected when at most one error occurs in every bounded correction locality even if height-balance flags are absent. The structure is therefore 1-locally-correctable, and thus trivially both 1-local-detectable and 1-correctable. However, without these flags certain pairs of changes within subtrees are undetectable, as shown in Figure 7.5, since they leave the structure appearing internally to be correct. Thus, if height balance flags are absent, this structure is unusual, since it has exactly the same detectability, local detectability, correctability, and local correctability.

Figure 7.5. A pair of undetectable changes in $N_w \cdot a$ and $N_x \cdot r$

Given that node identifiers do contain height balance flags, the structure is 2-detectable since any undetectable transformation of the instance requires at least three changes, and certain sets of three changes are indeed undetectable as shown in Figure 7.6.
7.3.3. Local correction

When correct, the AVL tree can be traversed in the same sequence by either following the single-linked list formed by the arcs, or by traversing the links that form the tree. Each step of the arc traversal involves examining one new arc. Following the same traversal using links is considerably more complex, but still involves examining at most a bounded number of new components at each step, as justified below.

Suppose that we have arrived at some non-null link $N_x \cdot c$ and wish to identify the non-null link $N_m \cdot c = N_x \cdot c \cdot a$ so that we can proceed to the next step of the traversal. Then, as shown in Figure 7.7, at most four new null links will be examined before it is determined that $N_x$ has no children or grandchildren that might contain this link. The search for this link then continues by proceeding up the tree from $N_x$, until we arrive at a node $N_y$ having $N_x$ in its left subtree. Since the tree is balanced, the node addressed by $N_y \cdot r$ exists and therefore contains the next two links in the ordering. If this node is a leaf node then two further null links will be encountered, before repeating the ascent of the tree from $N_y$ until we encounter some $N_z$ having $N_y$ in its left subtree. Because the tree is balanced, the node
addressed by \( N_z \cdot r \) exists and has at least one child. Thus in the worst case we will encounter a seventh null link \( N_z \cdot r \cdot l \), before encountering the non-null link \( N_z \cdot r \cdot r \).

Conversely, if no further non-null link exists, then during one of the two ascents up the tree the header node will be encountered, signalling that the traversal is complete.

![Diagram](image)

Figure 7.7. Maximum null links \( \emptyset \) between \( N_x \cdot c \) and \( N_m \cdot c \)

Having detected a discrepancy between arcs and links as a result of performing the above parallel traversal, any single error causing this discrepancy must occur in the last arc examined, or in the links examined during the last two steps of the parallel traversal, since either a null link encountered in the previous step of the traversal erroneously contained the same value as the desired link, or some error was encountered during the current step of the traversal.

Since we know that a single error exists in the above components we can assume that no error occurs in a bounded number of other new components that the correction procedure wishes to examine, following the detection of an error.
Identifying null links that contain erroneous values and non-null links that have erroneously become null is therefore trivial since node identifiers contain flags indicating the location of null links within these nodes. Correcting such links is also trivial since null links correctly contain a known value, and non-null links correctly contain the same value as the last arc examined.

So, assume that null links within the locality being corrected contain no errors, and that non-null links appear non-null even if erroneous. Then the error within this locality must occur either in the last arc examined, or in the non-null link that was expected to contain the same value as this last arc. If the location of the error can be determined, the error can be trivially corrected since these two pointers agree when correct.

If the erroneous pointer addresses a non-existent node this can be detected when we attempt to access this node. Similarly if the erroneous pointer addresses a node outside of the instance being corrected, this can be detected by examining the identifier in this node.

So suppose that $N_x \cdot l$ and $N_w \cdot a$ address different nodes within the instance being corrected, as shown in Figure 7.8, and let $N_z$ be the node that both should address. Then one further traversal step using only correct links can be performed, arriving at the node addressed by $N_m \cdot c = N_z \cdot a$. This is because $N_x$ either has a right child addressed by $N_z \cdot a$, or the node correctly addressed by $N_x \cdot l$ can be assumed to be a leaf since the tree is balanced. Having identified the correct value of $N_z \cdot a$, using only correct pointers, we can identify $N_z$ and thus the erroneous pointer, since $N_z$ is not $N_w$, and no other correct node within the structure contains an arc with the same value as $N_z$. 
Figure 7.8. Possible configurations if left link or arc is in error

Now suppose that $N_x \cdot r$ and $N_w \cdot a$ address different nodes within the instance being corrected. If $N_x \cdot l$ is null or addresses an internal node, then the next non-null link $N_m \cdot c$ within the link traversal does not depend on $N_x \cdot r$, and correction can be performed as described above.

A problem arises however if $N_x \cdot r = N_w \cdot a$ and $N_x \cdot l$ addresses a leaf node, since in this case determining the correct value of $N_m \cdot c$ involves determining the correct value of $N_x \cdot r$. This occurs for example if one of the changes depicted in Figure 7.5 occurs. Fortunately, in this case $N_x \cdot r$ correctly addresses a subtree containing at most three nodes, since the tree is balanced. Thus if either $N_w \cdot a$ or $N_x \cdot r$ address a subtree containing more than three nodes, then the other pointer must be correct. Otherwise, the algorithm locates the next non-null link $N_n \cdot c$ not under $N_x$, by temporarily assuming that $N_x \cdot r$ is null. Then it locates the node $N_z$ visited last within each subtree, and rejects the possibility that $N_x \cdot r$ correctly addresses this subtree if $N_z \cdot a = N_n \cdot c$. If neither subtree is rejected during this process, then both contain $N_z$. Since the two subtrees are distinct but each contains at most three nodes, one subtree must contain the single node $N_z$, while the other has as its root the parent of $N_z$. Thus, both $N_w \cdot a$ and $N_x \cdot r$ correctly address this larger subtree.

Having corrected all pointers, identifiers can be corrected. Correction of the height balance flags in each node can be accomplished efficiently by using a post-
order traversal, if the height of each left subtree-visited is stacked, until the height of
the corresponding right subtree has been established. Correcting the other
information in each node identifier is trivial.

7.4. A robust trie

7.4.1. Description

A trie is an $m$-ary tree structure which allows rapid retrieval of data [72]. The
structure consists of a collection of nodes that each address, in some manner, an
ordered set of at most $m$ children. The keys present within this structure are
represented in an alphabet of $m$ characters, and each possible path from the header
node to a leaf node spells out consecutive characters of one key within the structure.
To avoid some keys being initial subsequences of other keys, keys are usually
terminated by a special termination character.

In general, the cost of storing a vector of $m$ pointers in each node of a trie is
prohibitive, and we therefore will use lists to represent tries [3]. The first child
below any node is addressed by the child link in its parent node, while all the siblings
of this child node are linked to this first child node by using a single sibling link in
each node. Since absent siblings are not included in this linked list, each node also
contains a single character key identifying the relative position of this node within
the sibling list. The last sibling pointer in the sibling list addresses the parent node.

The above structure degenerates into a $(+1,-1)$ linked list when $m$ is one, and
into an unconstrained, but non-standard, binary tree when $m$ is two. However, it is
also possible to use the above structure to represent a constrained binary tree, in
which links have their more normal interpretation, by redefining child links as left
links, and sibling links as right links. For this reason we will denote child links by $l$
and sibling links by $r$. In such a constrained binary tree at most $m$ right links can be
followed successively before arriving at a null right link.

Such a constraint is easily enforced if rotations are allowed. Simply detect
violations of this constraint when attempting to insert any node, and re-establish this
constraint by rotating the parent of this node to the left of this node so that it
becomes a left child of this node. The rotation is particularly straightforward and can be accomplished easily, even if the structure contains the redundancy described below. However, it should be stressed that this rotation increases the amount of imbalance below any rotation point, and will therefore tend to encourage the construction of unbalanced trees.

7.4.2. Additional redundancy

The tree structure being considered will be made more robust by adding additional redundancy to the nodes of the structure. Each node will contain a node identifier which, when correct, identifies the instance to which this node belongs. The identifier will also contain two flags, explicitly identifying the location of null links within this node. Each node will also contain an arc pointer. If desired, keys may also be protected by using checksums as described above.

Null right links address the parent node of the node that they reside in. As a special case (since the header node has no parent) the null right link in \( N_H \) addresses \( N_H \). If the tree is empty, then all pointers in \( N_H \) are null. Otherwise, \( N_H \cdot l \) correctly addresses the root node, and \( N_H \cdot r \) is null. Arc pointers form a cyclic single linked list, by generalizing the cyclic linked list formed by arc pointers in the AVL tree. Specifically, this linked list is ordered using the following node traversal:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Visit}(N_H) \quad &\quad \text{Traverse}(N) \{ \\
\text{Traverse}(N_H) \quad &\quad \text{For each child } N_i \text{ of } N \text{ Visit}(N_i) \\
&\quad \text{For each child } N_i \text{ of } N \text{ Traverse}(N_i) \\
&\} 
\end{align*}
\]

Figure 7.9. Arc traversal order in the \( m \)-ary Trie

As shown in Figure 7.10, this structure is similar to the robust AVL tree, and, like the AVL tree without height balance flags, is 1-detectable, 1-local-correctable, and thus also 1-local-detectable and 1-correctable. As before, single pointer errors will be detected by performing a parallel traversal of links and arcs.
7.4.3. Local correction

The only possible traversal using arcs is to follow the single-linked list formed by these arcs. Each step of this traversal involves examining one new arc. Following the same traversal using links is considerably more complex, but errors can still be detected and corrected using a bounded locality, as justified below.

Suppose that in performing the above parallel traversal we have arrived at some link $N_x \cdot c$ and some arc $N_w \cdot a$ and wish to determine if $N_x \cdot c$ is null. The value of this link and the identifier $N_x \cdot id$ provide two distinct votes to assist in resolving this issue. In cases where these two votes agree we can conclude that both votes are correct since at most one error is anticipated in either vote. Otherwise one vote contains an error implying that we can assume that a bounded number of other components are correct.
In particular, $N_w \cdot a$ must be correct. If $N_w \cdot a$ addresses $N_H$, the suspect link must therefore be null. So suppose that $N_w \cdot a$ does not address $N_H$, and thus does not address a previously trusted node. Then $N_x \cdot l$ is null if and only if $N_w \cdot a$ does not address a descendant (the first child) of $N_x$, while $N_x \cdot r$ is null if and only if $N_w \cdot a$ does not address a node (the following sibling) having the same parent as $N_x$. This is shown in Figure 7.11.

![Figure 7.11. Examples for which $N_x \cdot l \neq \emptyset$ and $N_x \cdot r \neq \emptyset$](image)

Consider the nodes visited when following the path $N_w \cdot a \cdot r^m$, given that this path terminates prematurely if $N_H$ is encountered or if $N_x$ is encountered when attempting to determine if $N_x \cdot r$ is null. Since the correction locality contains some error not occurring in $N_w \cdot a$, we can assume that all pointers in this path are correct. The link $N_x \cdot l$ is therefore null if and only if $N_x$ is not encountered on this path, while the link $N_x \cdot r$ is null if and only if the parent of $N_x$ is not encountered. Having determined if the suspect link is null, the offending link or identifier can be trivially corrected.

Since null links can be distinguished from non-null links whenever at most one error occurs in a locality, the links and arcs can be successfully traversed in parallel, given that no locality contains more than one error. Any remaining discrepancy encountered in such a parallel traversal implies that the last link and arc pointer examined should agree, but don’t. All that is required of the correction algorithm upon detecting such a discrepancy, is that it identify the pointer in error, and assign it the value of the other pointer, before continuing.
Suppose that the discrepancy occurs between $N_x \cdot l$ and $N_w \cdot a$. Then we wish to determine which pointer addresses the first child of $N_x$. If either pointer addresses $N_x$ then this pointer is clearly in error. So assume otherwise. Then as before, follow the two paths $N_x \cdot l \cdot r^m$ and $N_w \cdot a \cdot r^m$. If $N_x$ is not the first trusted node on one such path then this path must be incorrect. So assume otherwise. Then both $N_x \cdot l$ and $N_w \cdot a$ address descendents of $N_x$, and the paths $N_x \cdot l \cdot r^m$ and $N_w \cdot a \cdot r^m$ merge at some node, $N_y$, prior to arriving back at $N_x$, since $N_x$ is addressed by only one right link occurring in an untrusted node.

Since $N_x \cdot l \neq N_w \cdot a$, at least one path must visit a node, $N_z$, prior to arriving at $N_y$. This path is correct if $N_z$ is the previous sibling of $N_y$, and incorrect if $N_z$ is the last child of $N_y$. This is shown in Figure 7.12. But we can easily determine if $N_z$ is a child of $N_y$ by following the pointers $N_y \cdot l \cdot r^m$. Thus the first child below any node can always be identified.

![Figure 7.12](image)

Figure 7.12. Both $N_x \cdot l$ and $N_w \cdot a$ address descendents of $N_x$

Now suppose that the discrepancy occurs between $N_x \cdot r$ and $N_x \cdot a$ and let $N_p$ be the trusted parent of $N_x$. Follow the paths $N_x \cdot r^m$ and $N_x \cdot a \cdot r^m$ and reject any path that fails to visit $N_p$ or visits some trusted node prior to arriving at $N_p$. So assume that both paths first visit the trusted node $N_p$. Then as before both paths must
merge at some node \( N_y \). Perform the operation described above to determine if either path visits a descendent of \( N_y \), and reject any such path. If neither path is rejected then the correct path contains the earlier sibling of \( N_x \), and therefore the longer path is correct. Having identified the erroneous path, we can determine if \( N_x \cdot r \) or \( N_x \cdot a \) is in error, and thus can correct this pointer. Thus, all pointers and identifiers in the above trie structure are locally correctable.

7.5. Conclusions

The above structures are of considerable interest for two reasons. Firstly, it is hoped that these structures have some practical application. Secondly, the existence of these structures significantly enlarges the set of known locally-correctable robust storage structures, and this is of benefit to those working in this field.

Of the various tree structures presented in this dissertation, the locally correctable checksummed tree structure is most easily implemented and used, and involves the least overhead when being accessed. The locally correctable binary search tree, presented in this chapter, is also not difficult either to implement or to use, and typically involves only a small overhead.

The locally correctable AVL tree has two weaknesses. Firstly, even though the AVL tree is typically a constrained binary search tree, we have not used keys to enhance the robustness of this structure. Secondly, we have produced a binary tree which has more constraints imposed on it than we might have wished, and this seems unfortunate.

The \( m \)-ary trie structure is the first unconstrained locally-correctable \( m \)-ary tree structure to be presented. The structure is specifically designed to be efficient in its use of space, and can, if desired, be used to represent a constrained binary tree in which links have their standard interpretation.

Results pertaining to the behaviour of the sibling-linked tree are presented in Appendix E, and F. Correction algorithms have not yet been implemented for the other trees presented in this chapter, and these structures appear too complex to be modelled accurately using the techniques described in the next chapter.
Chapter VIII
Mathematical models

8.1. Introduction

Having designed a robust storage structure, the intrinsic properties of this storage structure are naturally of some interest. Similarly, having designed a correction procedure for such a robust storage structure, the behaviour of this procedure is of interest.

Historically, the robustness of a storage structure was typically considered a function of its global detectability and global correctability. Although this function was never defined explicitly, it was not difficult to claim informally that a storage structure which was \((n+1)\)-correctable was more robust than a storage structure which was only \(n\)-correctable. This was obviously rather simplistic, and ignored many important issues discussed in Chapter 2 and Chapter 3.

In Chapter 4 this simple model for describing the robustness of a storage structure breaks down. We could perhaps provide upper and lower bounds on the number of errors that can be corrected by a local correction procedure when operating on a locally correctable storage structure, but neither bound realistically describes the robustness of such a structure. At the very least, given an arbitrary instance state of some specific size, which is known to contain some particular error distribution, we would like to know the probability that these errors are locally correctable, and in cases when they are not, we would like to know the probability that these errors disconnect the instance state being examined.

More generally, given an arbitrary storage structure and a known error distribution, we would like to know the expected number of nodes that can be traversed prior to encountering a disconnected node, and the expected number of nodes that can be traversed by a correction algorithm before failing. We may also
wish to know the variance in these measures. Such measures can be used to directly compare different storage structures, and assist in identifying appropriate sizes for instance states.

Previously, such issues could only be explored by resorting to empirical studies of the robustness of instance states, such as presented in Appendix C. This approach was unsatisfactory for a number of reasons. Firstly, any results obtained pertained to specific, typically small, instance states of robust storage structures, and provided little information about the behaviour of algorithms operating on different instance states, or related robust storage structures. Secondly, these results were subject to statistical error, and this made the results difficult to compare or interpret accurately. Thirdly, prior to being able to perform such studies, a considerable amount of software needed to be developed, tested and debugged, and despite every effort to produce correct code, it was difficult to claim that empirical results were not biased by undetected errors. Finally, considerable computing resources were required in order to produce statistically significant results.

In this chapter, combinatorial and Markov models will be considered, which may be used to study the robustness of locally correctable storage structures. The combinatorial model provides general insights into the behaviour of a 1-local-correction procedure, when operating on an arbitrary storage structure known to contain a specific number of errors. The Markov models are very much more detailed and may be used to investigate the behaviour of many specific robust storage structure algorithms, when errors are assumed to occur with some fixed set of probabilities.

8.2. Constant error model

Historically, it was assumed that some maximum number of errors occurred in a storage structure instance, and therefore, when studying the behaviour of global correction routines, some constant number of errors was randomly placed in the instance being corrected. Later, when studying the behaviour of local-correction procedures, a constant number of errors continued to be introduced during any one experiment.
This error distribution can be trivially modelled by translating correct instance states into some suitably chosen sequence of components, some constant number of which contain errors. Unfortunately, this model needs further clarification when considering the behaviour of a correction procedure, since correction procedures can examine components not in the original correct instance, and can examine single components in many different contexts.

It is not difficult to ignore the fact that correction algorithms examine components not described within our model, since all errors are assumed to occur within our model, and it is these errors that are of interest. There are at least two alternative simplifying assumptions that can be made about the way in which an \( r \)-local-correction procedure, \( \Psi \), visits components.

We can assume that \( \Psi \) produces linearisations in which the order of components is invariant, and that therefore any linearisation produced by \( \Psi \) is merely an initial subsequence of the linearisation emitted when operating on the original correct instance state. This will be called the \textit{unperturbed} constant error model, and can be modelled mathematically by assuming that \( \Psi \) operates on an sequence of \( n \) components, some \( e \) of which contain errors. If we make the further simplifying assumption that there are always exactly \( m \) untrusted components in any correction locality, then we can assert that the locality constraint is violated, if and only if some subsequence of \( m \) components, within this sequence of \( n \) components, contains more than \( r \) uncorrected errors.

Alternatively, we can assume that having made a change to a component in a linearisation, subsequent components are visited in an order which is independent of the order in which these components were previously visited. One method of approximating this assumption mathematically, is to assume that after each error is corrected, remaining errors are redistributed throughout the possibly erroneous components. This will be called the \textit{perturbed} constant error model.

Neither of the above models reflect accurately the effect that errors will have on a local correction procedure, since they represent rather extreme assumptions. However, the unperturbed constant error model seems somewhat more realistic than the perturbed constant error model, and fortuitously this model is a little easier to
work with. In this section we present some results that pertain to this error model. No results are presented for the perturbed constant error model.

**Lemma 8.1**

There are exactly \( f(n, m, e) = \binom{n-(m-1)*(e-1)}{e} \) ways in which \( e > 0 \) errors can be inserted into a sequence of \( n \) components, so that no subsequence of \( m \) components contains more than 1 error.

**Proof**

The proof proceeds by induction. In the base case when \( e = 1 \) this single error can occur in any of the \( n \) components. Thus \( f(n, m, 1) = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \binom{n-m-i}{e-1} \) as desired. So assume that \( e \) errors occur in the sequence of \( n \) components, and that the proposed formula is correct for any smaller number of errors in the sequence.

Let the earliest error in the sequence occur at \( c_i \), where the location, \( i \), of \( c_i \) ranges between 0 and \( n-1 \). Then since none of the other errors occur in the subsequence of \( m \) components beginning at \( c_i \), we have the recurrence relation

\[
f(n,m,e) = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} f(n-m-i, m, e-1).
\]

Replacing \( f \) by the proposed formula we wish to show inductively that

\[
\binom{n-(m-1)*(e-1)}{e} = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \binom{n-m-i-(m-1)*(e-2)}{e-1}.
\]

But

\[
\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \binom{n-m-i-(m-1)*(e-2)}{e-1} = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \binom{n-(m-1)*(e-2)}{e} + 1
\]

by a basic combinatorial identity [59]. This is simply \( \binom{n-(m-1)*(e-1)}{e} \) as desired. ■
Corollary 8.1

The probability \( P(X \geq e) \) that at least \( e \) errors can be inserted into a sequence of \( n \) components so that no subsequence of length \( m \) contains more than one error is

\[
\left\{ \frac{n-(m-1)*(e-1)}{e} \right\} / \left\{ \frac{n}{e} \right\}.
\]

Graphs of the above function for representative values of \( n, m, \) and \( e \) are presented in Appendix D. The above result is a generalization of the result for \( f(n,2,e) \) which appears to have first been presented in [68]. A corresponding result for the case when no error occurs exactly two components after a previous error is presented in [74], and this is generalized for the case when no error occurs exactly \( n \) components after a previous error in [66, 102].

We have been unable either to find, or to deduce, the more general formula for the case when at most \( r \) errors are allowed in any subsequence of \( m \) components. However, when both \( m \) and \( r \) are small, the patterns which are forbidden to occur in any subsequence of \( m \) components can be enumerated, and a recurrence relationship providing specific solutions of this problem then derived [57, 58]. Unfortunately, this derivation requires that we invert a square matrix having as many rows and columns as there are illegal patterns. Since the elements of this square matrix are themselves polynomials in two variables, this inversion rapidly becomes infeasible for even moderate values of \( m \) and \( r \).

Lemma 8.2

The expected number of errors, \( E(e) \), that can be inserted into a sequence of \( n \) components, so that no subsequence of \( m \) components contains more than one error is

\[
\sum_{e=1}^{n} \left\{ \frac{n-(m-1)*(e-1)}{e} \right\} / \left\{ \frac{n}{e} \right\}.
\]

Graphs of this function for representative values of \( n \) and \( m \) are presented in Appendix D.
Proof

By the corollary to Lemma 8.1 the probability $P(X \geq e)$ that at least $e$ errors can be inserted into $n$ sequential components so that no subsequence of length $m$ contains more than one error is $\left[ \begin{array}{c} n-(m-1)(e-1) \\ e \end{array} \right] / \left[ \begin{array}{c} n \\ e \end{array} \right]$. The probability $P(X = e)$ that exactly $e$ errors can be inserted is $P(X \geq e) - P(X \geq e+1)$. By definition, the expected number of errors $E(e)$ that can be introduced is $\sum_{e=1}^{\infty} e \cdot P(X = e)$. This is

$$\sum_{e=1}^{n} e \cdot \left[ \begin{array}{c} n-(m-1)(e-1) \\ e \end{array} \right] / \left[ \begin{array}{c} n \\ e \end{array} \right] = \sum_{e=1}^{n-1} e \cdot \left[ \begin{array}{c} n-(m-1)(e) \\ e+1 \end{array} \right] / \left[ \begin{array}{c} n \\ e+1 \end{array} \right].$$

Cancelling common terms in this expression gives

$$\sum_{e=1}^{n} \left[ \begin{array}{c} n-(m-1)(e-1) \\ e \end{array} \right] / \left[ \begin{array}{c} n \\ e \end{array} \right].$$

Theorem 8.1

If $E(e)$ is the expected number of errors that can be introduced into a sequence of $n$ components, such that no more than one error occurs in any subsequence of size $m$, then $E(e) \to \infty$ as $n \to \infty$.

Proof

It has been established in Lemma 8.2 that $E(e) = \sum_{e=1}^{n} \left[ \begin{array}{c} n-(m-1)(e-1) \\ e \end{array} \right] / \left[ \begin{array}{c} n \\ e \end{array} \right] = \sum_{e=1}^{m} \frac{1}{\prod_{i=0}^{e-1} \frac{n-(m-1)(e-1)-i}{n-i}}$. So $E(e) \geq \sum_{e=1}^{c} \prod_{i=0}^{e-1} \left[ \begin{array}{c} (m-1)(e-1) \\ n-i \end{array} \right]$, for any arbitrary constant $c \leq n/m$. But $\lim_{n \to \infty} \prod_{i=0}^{e-1} \left[ \begin{array}{c} (m-1)(e-1) \\ n-i \end{array} \right] = 1$, since

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \left[ \begin{array}{c} (m-1)(e-1) \\ n-i \end{array} \right] = 1$$

when $i$ and $e$ are bounded above by the constant $c$ and $m$ is a given constant. Thus $\lim_{n \to \infty} E(e) \geq \sum_{e=1}^{c} 1 = c$. But $c$ can be made arbitrarily large as $n \to \infty$. Thus $\lim_{n \to \infty} E(e) = \infty$. ■
Corollary 8.2

The expected number of errors that can be corrected by a local-correction procedure, operating on a sufficiently large instance state, exceeds any given bound.

Proof

All local-correction procedures perform 1-local-correction. Lemma 8.2 provides a lower bound on the expected number of errors that can be corrected by a 1-local-correction procedure, when operating on an instance state containing $n$ components, given that this procedure uses localities containing at most $m$ untrusted components. Theorem 8.1 shows that, by increasing $n$, this lower bound can be made arbitrarily large.

Theorem 8.2

There are $N(n,m,e) = \binom{m}{e} + (n-m)\binom{m-1}{e-1}$ ways in which $e$ errors may be inserted into a linearisation containing $n$ components so that all $e$ errors occur in some locality of size $m$.

Proof

If an error occurs in the first component of the linearisation then $e$ errors occur in a locality of size $m$ if and only if all errors occur in the first $m$ components. There are $\binom{m-1}{e-1}$ ways in which the other $e-1$ errors can be placed in the next $m-1$ components. Conversely, if the first component in the linearisation is correct, then the number of ways that the $e$ errors can be placed in the linearisation so that they all occur in some locality of size $m$ is $N(n-1,m,e)$. So $N(n,m,e) = N(n-1,m,e) + \binom{m-1}{e-1}$. Clearly, $N(m,m,e) = \binom{m}{e}$. Thus $N(n,m,e) = \binom{m}{e} + (n-m)\binom{m-1}{e-1}$. ■
Theorem 8.3

The number of ways that \( e \) errors can be distributed in a linearisation containing \( n \) components so that no more than \( r \) errors occur in the first erroneous locality of size \( m \) is

\[
\sum_{j=0}^{r-1} \binom{m-1}{j} \binom{n-m+1}{e-j}.
\]

Proof

Let there be exactly \( j \) errors in the first erroneous locality, and let the first error occur at component \( i \), where \( i \) ranges between 0 and \( n-m-e+j \). Then the \( j-1 \) errors following the first error must occur in the next \( m-1 \) components of the linearisation, while the remaining \( e-j \) errors must occur in the last \( n-m-i \) components of the linearisation. The total number of ways of placing exactly \( j \) errors in the first erroneous locality is therefore

\[
\sum_{i=0}^{n-m-e+j} \binom{m-1}{j-1} \binom{n-m-i}{e-j}.
\]

Now allowing \( j \) to range over its possible values we deduce that the total number of ways that at most \( r \) errors can occur in the first erroneous locality is exactly

\[
\sum_{j=1}^{r} \binom{m-1}{j} \binom{n-m+1}{e-j+1} = \sum_{j=0}^{r-1} \binom{m}{j} \binom{n-m+1}{e-j}.
\]

8.3. Markov models

Instead of assuming that some set number of errors occurs in an instance state, we may assume that each component examined has a constant probability of being in error. Then, we can construct discrete Markov models which describe various abstract properties of the robust storage structure being investigated, and in particular can predict with considerable accuracy the behaviour of various types of algorithms that operate on such structures.
A Markov model [79] is described by a collection of states, and transitions between these states. Given any two states, \( S_1 \) and \( S_2 \), which need not be distinct, there is some constant probability that a transition will occur from state \( S_1 \) to \( S_2 \), given that we are currently in state \( S_1 \). The probabilities of all transitions from any state, \( S_i \), sum to unity. Having selected some start state, we wish to determine the probability that we arrive in some other state and may also wish to determine the expected number of transitions of a certain type that occur before arriving in this selected state. Such selected states are called final states, and allow no transition to any other state.

We will use Markov models to simulate the occurrence of specific events, such as the discovery of an error, the correction of an error, or the traversal of a node, and will wish to predict the number of such events that occur prior to some catastrophic event such as the discovery that the instance state being examined is disconnected or not correctable.

One clever way of counting the number of events of a particular type, which occur in a Markov model, involves transforming transition probabilities into generating functions, by multiplying transition probabilities by dummy variables. Specifically, suppose that during a given transition an event, \( X \), occurs, which we wish to count. Then we multiply the probability of this transition by some dummy variable, \( x \). Later, having deduced a formula for the probability of a move (potentially via many steps) from state \( S_1 \) to state \( S_2 \), we can extract the probability that \( X \) occurs exactly \( n \) times during this move, by setting all of the dummy variables except \( x \) to 1, expanding the derived formula as a polynomial in \( x \), setting all but the coefficient of \( x^n \) to zero, and then setting \( x \) to 1. Various other types of result, such as the probability that an event occurs at least or at most \( n \) times, or that multiple events occur, can easily be deduced by using this technique.

Typically, we will wish to derive a generating function that encapsulates, for the events of interest, the expected number of such events that occur between beginning in the starting state and terminating in a final state. The rules for deriving such a generating function are straightforward. While we have more than one generating function describing a transition from state \( S_1 \) to \( S_2 \), replace these generating
functions by their sum. This is equivalent to summing the probabilities of independent mutually exclusive but identical events, so that the overall probability of that event can be deduced. Having eliminated duplicate transitions, select some state $S_1$ which allows no direct transition to itself, and explode the transitions into $S_1$ with those out of $S_1$, by multiplying each such pair of transitions producing new transition rules for moves which essentially pass through $S_1$ but no longer explicitly reference $S_1$. This is equivalent to multiplying the probabilities of independent events when wishing to determine the probability that both occur. Eventually, we will either reduce the Markov model to a single transition from a start state to a final state, or will be obliged to remove a transition which moves from some state $S_1$ directly back to $S_1$. If the generating function associated with this loop is $G$, then multiply the probability of other transitions from $S_1$ by $1/(1-G)$, and remove the loop transition. Thus, the sum of all output transition probabilities from $S_1$ remains 1. The above operations are then resumed until only one transition remains.

**Example 8.1**

Suppose that we wish to study a standard double-linked list, and are particularly interested in the connectivity of such a structure. Then, proceeding empirically, we might write an algorithm which, having been provided with an exact description of the errors introduced into the data memory state, attempted to traverse an instance state of such a structure, counted errors encountered and nodes traversed, and reported these counts when disconnection was detected or the traversal was complete.

Let us assume that the probability of an error being observed is $p$, and that we count the number of errors encountered in the dummy variable $y$. We will also count the number of nodes traversed using the dummy variable $z$. The Markov model which performs the desired simulation is presented in Figure 8.1. The Markov model starts in state $S_0$, and while no error is encountered in a forward pointer, proceeds forward through the instance state, counting the number of nodes traversed. When an error is encountered the Markov model moves to state $S_1$, in
the process counting the error observed, and then proceeds to move backwards from
the headers of the instance, continuing to accumulate the count of the number of
nodes visited. When an error is encountered in a back pointer, the model enters its
final state since the instance state being examined has been discovered to be
disconnected.

\[ z^* (1-p) \quad z^* (1-p) \quad 1 \]

Figure 8.1. A Markov model for connectivity in a double linked list

The generating function, \( G \), describing the behaviour of the Markov model in
moving from \( S_0 \) to \( S_2 \), can easily be seen to be \( G = \left( \frac{y*p}{1-z^*(1-p)} \right)^2 \). Suppose
that we wish to study the connectivity of a double-linked list containing 100 data
nodes, given that components contain errors with probability \( p \). Then, presumably
using a symbolic manipulation package such as Maple [30], we set \( y=1 \), expand \( G \) as
a Taylor series around \( z \), and truncate this series by eliminating terms of order
greater than \( z^{99} \). Setting \( z=1 \), we derive a function of \( p \) which expresses the
probability that disconnection will be discovered, prior to traversing all 100 data
nodes. By allowing \( p \) to range between 0 and 1, we can then study the connectivity
of a double-linked list without necessarily conducting any empirical studies.

Now suppose that we wish to know the expected number of nodes \( E(z) \) which
can be traversed by such a procedure, before detecting that the instance state is
disconnected. Then by setting \( y=1 \), differentiating \( G \) with respect to \( z \), and then
setting \( z=1 \), we replace terms of the form \( a_b z^b \) in \( G \) by \( b a_b \). Since \( a_b \) is the
probability that our algorithm observes exactly \( b \) nodes before terminating, the
resulting expression \( E(z) = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} b a_b \) is the expected number of nodes visited. This
easily derived formula is useful, since it describes the robustness of a double-linked
list in terms of its size.
We may also easily determine the variance $V(z)$ of the number of nodes visited by this traversal. This variance is $V(z) = E(z^2) - E^2(z)$. Consider setting $y = 1$ as before, differentiating $G$ with respect to $z$ twice, and then setting $z = 1$. Then we replace terms of the form $a_b \cdot z^b$ in $G$ by $b \cdot (b-1) \cdot a_b$. Therefore, the resulting expression \[
\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} b^* (b-1) \cdot a_b = E(z^2) - E(z).\] Adding $E(z)$ to this expression produces an expression for $E(z^2)$, and subtracting the square of $E(z)$ from this expression produces the desired formula for $V(z)$.

8.4. Regular linked lists

A large number of regular linked lists have been analyzed both empirically and by using Markov models. To remain compatible with the Markov models, the empirical studies assumed that there was some fixed probability that an error occurred in any component. Thus the empirical studies differed from earlier studies, presented in Appendix C, which assumed that an instance state contained some specified number of errors. The results of these studies are presented in Appendix E and Appendix F.

Somewhat surprisingly, it was not possible to produce a Markov model which allowed the connectivity of a spiral($k$) storage structure to be studied precisely. Suppose that the marked pointers in Figure 8.2 contain errors. Then $N_1$ is connected if there is a path from $N_3$ to $N_2$. However, as shown in Figure 8.3 there may be a path from $N_3$ to $N_2$ if and only if there is a path from $N_6$ to $N_5$. Thus, the task of finding a path to $N_1$ may involve recursion. Therefore, determining that $N_1$ is connected may involve examining an unbounded number of pointers, an unbounded number of which contain errors. This problem cannot therefore be described by a Markov model, since a Markov model has only a finite memory in which to record the errors which have so far been encountered.
The simplest locally correctable linked list analyzed was a double-linked list containing a forward pointer, a back pointer, and two additional checksum components. The error-correcting code presented in Appendix A1 was used to produce a 1-local-correctable structure, in which any one error in a node was correctable while any two errors were not. The Markov model describing the behaviour of a correction algorithm operating on this structure is presented in Figure 8.4. Errors occur with probability $p$. The dummy variable $y$ indicates that the component being examined is in error. The dummy variable $z$ indicates that local correction is advancing to the next node in the linked list.
Figure 8.4. Correction of one error in any node containing four components

When considering more complex local-correction procedures the Markov models must typically use additional states to "remember" not only that an error has been encountered, as is the case in the example above, but also to record the exact set of components in the current locality known to contain errors, because errors occurring in one locality are often carried forward into a bounded number of subsequent localities, and thus can have subtle effects on the behaviour of the local-correction algorithm being modelled.

8.5. Tree structures

In order to construct Markov models which describe structures which are less regular than linked lists, we must provide not only the probability that an error occurs in any given state, but also the probability that we next visit a node of a particular type. For example, the behaviour of an algorithm traversing a tree structure is in part dependent on the distribution of full nodes, incomplete nodes, and leaf nodes.

When attempting to predict the behaviour of such an algorithm operating on a tree containing \( n \) nodes, we begin by determining the expected number of full nodes, incomplete nodes, and leaf nodes, in a tree containing \( n \) nodes. Then we can make the simplifying assumption that the probability of arriving at a node of a particular
type is merely the expected number of such nodes in the tree divided by $n$.

We present below the expected number of leaf, incomplete, and full nodes in a binary search tree that is created by the insertion of keys in a random sequence. It seems clear given the importance of these results, and the ease with which they can be obtained, that these results are not new. However, these results are relevant and are easier to derive than to cite.

Lemma 8.3

If a binary search tree is created by the random insertion of $n \geq 2$ distinct keys, the expected number of leaf nodes is $(n+1)/3$, the expected number of incomplete nodes is the same, and the expected number of full nodes is $(n-2)/3$.

Proof

Assume that some set of $n$ distinct keys is to be inserted into an initially empty binary search tree. There are $n!$ possible permutations of $n$ keys and therefore there are $n!$ possible binary search trees which may be constructed, not all of which are distinct. Denote the total number of full nodes in all such trees of size $n$ by $f_n$, the number of incomplete nodes by $h_n$, and the number of leaf nodes by $l_n$. Now consider how these variables change when the forest of all $(n+1)!$ trees containing $n+1$ nodes is constructed.

Since there are $n+1$ times as many trees, and full nodes in trees of size $n$ remain full if an additional node is inserted in the tree, it is only necessary to identify the number of new full nodes which occur as a result of inserting the last node into each position in each tree in the forest. But this is merely $h_n$, since in exactly one tree of size $n+1$ will a particular incomplete node in a tree of size $n$ become a full node. Thus $f_{n+1} = (n+1)f_n + h_n$.

Applying the same reasoning to incomplete nodes, $h_{n+1} = (n+1)h_n - h_n + 2l_n$, since overall $h_n$ incomplete nodes will become full nodes while each leaf node has two ways of becoming an incomplete node. Finally, since a leaf node is added to each of the $(n+1)!$ trees in the forest of trees containing $n+1$ nodes,
\[ l_{n+1} = (n+1)! l_n - 2 n l_n + (n+1)! \]

The equation \( l_{n+1} = (n-1)! l_n + (n+1)! \) has a particular solution \( l_n = (n+1)! / 3 \) and this solution is exact for \( n \geq 2 \), since there are a total of two leaf nodes in the two possible trees containing two nodes. The equation \( h_{n+1} = n h_n + 2(n+1)! / 3 \) also has a particular solution \( h_n = (n+1)! / 3 \) which is exact for \( n \geq 2 \). The expected number of leaf and incomplete nodes in one of these \( n! \) trees is therefore \( 2(n+1)/3 \). Since each tree contains a total of \( n \) nodes, the expected number of full nodes is therefore \( (n-2)/3 \).

8.6. Conclusions

All of the correction procedures studied had finite Markov models that described exactly the set of errors which would cause these correction procedures to fail, given that multiple errors did not conspire to assist correction algorithms by masking the presence of errors.

In Appendix E and Appendix F many Markov models are presented, and the results of using these Markov models compared with empirical studies. Typically, the results produced by using Markov models very clearly correspond almost exactly to empirical results. Indeed, in the few cases where noticeable differences did occur, faults were subsequently discovered in the empirical studies. Had we not had such accurate tools for predicting the behaviour of the algorithms being studied, it seems likely that some of these faults would not have been found.

Although there are obvious benefits associated with using Markov models, some questions are not easily resolved by using Markov models. For example, it is relatively easy to construct models which count cases when correction algorithms operating on linked lists are misled, as a result of carefully selected values being placed in specific components. However, such models communicate nothing, unless it is also possible to determine the probability that errors do cause specific values to be placed in selected components.
Another problem with using Markov models to precisely describe the behaviour of more complex systems is the sheer size of the generating functions obtained. Although it was possible to produce a generating function describing the precise behaviour of the helix(3) correction algorithm described in Chapter 6, the resulting expression was more than 100,000 characters long, and even the problem of determining if this expression could be simplified proved to be computationally infeasible using available computing resources.
Chapter IX
Conclusions and further work

9.1. Conclusions

In Chapter 1 we presented a number of issues which we wished to explore in the hope that their resolution would lead to the discovery of good methods of implementing and correcting robust storage structures.

We began by suggesting that the specifications that correction routines operate under be reviewed, in the hope that better specifications might challenge rather than blinker the designers of robust storage structures.

In Chapter 3, we therefore stressed the role that the Valid State Hypothesis can play in the development of correction procedures, and then extended the desired behaviour of global correction algorithms, so that in cases where the number of errors encountered exceeded the number that could necessarily be corrected, these algorithms selectively performed correction, and otherwise reported failure. We then established upper and lower bounds on the selective correctability of arbitrary storage structures. Using these bounds, we showed how in a 1-global-correctable mod(2) linked list, 2 errors could always be corrected, provided that these two errors did not disconnect the instance state being examined.

In Chapter 4, we explored the issue of local correction, and showed that distinct votes could not always be used to detect errors in locally detectable structures. We therefore developed the notion of local connection functions, and showed that if a storage structure had a 2r-local-linearisation function which was r-local-connected, then the storage structure was at least r-locally-correctable. We then proposed the development of algorithms that performed selective-local-correction, and established upper and lower bounds on the selective local correctability of an arbitrary storage structure. In Chapter 5 and 6, we showed how this theory could be readily applied
to the mod\((k \geq 3)\) linked list, and the helix\((k \geq 3)\) linked list.

Our next area of concern addressed the underlying assumptions about the nature of errors introduced into the data memory state. There is only a limited amount of information available about the frequency and types of faults that, in practice, lead to errors in robust storage structures, and we were therefore keen to address this issue. However, it soon became apparent that such questions were not likely to produce any definitive results, and this avenue for research was therefore abandoned. Rather more constructively, in Chapter 8, we presented two new theoretical models for studying the effects of introducing errors into robust storage structures, and derived a number of new results that pertained to these error models.

We then indicated that there was a need to develop additional guidelines, indicating the properties that robust storage structures must have if they are to facilitate certain types of error correction. The theoretical results presented in Chapter 3 and Chapter 4 address this issue.

We then indicated that existing robust storage structures should be carefully reviewed, in the hope that such structures might be corrected more efficiently or accurately using techniques not originally considered when designing the structure. This led to an algorithm, presented in Chapter 3, for performing 2-selective-global-correction on mod\((k \geq 2)\) linked lists, and an algorithm, presented in Chapter 5, for performing 2-selective-local-correction on mod\((k \geq 3)\) linked lists. The helix\((k)\) linked list, presented in Chapter 6, also arose as the result of reviewing the existing spiral\((k)\) linked list structure. As shown in Appendix C1 and Appendix C2, these algorithms are significantly better than previous algorithms when correcting similar linked list structures.

We also expressed a desire to develop a number of new robust storage structures so that these could be evaluated and compared with existing storage structures. It was hoped that, in the process, new ideas and better methods of introducing redundancy into storage structures would be discovered. In Chapter 4 we presented a checksummed binary tree, in Chapter 6 we presented the helix\((k)\) linked list, and in Chapter 7 we presented three new tree structures, all of which were locally correctable.
Finally, we suggested that empirical studies provided only limited information about the behaviour of robust storage structures, and associated correction procedures, and that therefore there was a need to develop statistical models which, when presented with various parameters, accurately predicted the behaviour of robust storage structures, and their associated correction routines.

In Chapter 8 we therefore discussed the constant error model and showed, using this model, that the expected number of errors that could be corrected by a local correction procedure, when operating on a sufficiently large instance, exceeded any bound. We also developed results indicating the probability of performing 1-local-correction under a variety of different constraints, and presented these results graphically in Appendix D.

We then proposed using Markov models to simulate the introduction of errors into robust storage structures, so that we might predict the consequences of such errors. As shown in Appendix E and Appendix F, the results of using Markov models to predict the consequences of errors correlated almost exactly with the corresponding results obtained from empirical studies. This is obviously very exciting, and promises to make the evaluation of some robust storage structures very much easier, while also making such evaluations more accurate and complete.

Thus, this thesis has contributed to storage structure error correction in four main ways. Firstly, a number of new theoretical results have been presented which pertain to global and local error correction. Secondly, a theory has been developed which allows global and local correction algorithms to selectively perform correction and otherwise report failure. Thirdly, using these new theoretical results, better correction algorithms have been proposed for previously correctable storage structures, and a number of new robust storage structures designed. Finally, it has been shown that probability theory and Markov models are powerful tools for studying the properties of many robust storage structures.
9.2. Further work

Most of the unsolved problems pertaining to error detection and correction seem intrinsically hard, but are sufficiently important to merit further research.

The relationships between storage structures and local-linearisation functions are not well understood, and in particular it remains unclear how good local-linearisation functions can be derived from a given storage structure specification. A number of related issues should be addressed in the hope of resolving this question.

What are the constraints that limit the local detectability of a given local-linearisation function, and how does the local detectability of a linearisation function change as modifications are made to this linearisation function? How can the exact local detectability of a given linearisation function be determined? What is the relationship between linearisation functions capable of detecting different numbers of errors in different size localities, and how does one determine which is "better"? How does one translate a linearisation function having certain attributes into one that uses the smallest possible locality while continuing to satisfy these attributes?

In Chapter 4 we proved that an $r$-local-connected $2r$-local-linearisation function, $f$, had an $r$-local-correction function, $P_f$. However, the existence of $P_f$ does not necessarily imply the existence of an efficient $r$-local-correction procedure which can correct at least one error in any linearisation $f(x_1)$ containing between 1 and $r$ errors, since $P_f$ may not be computable by a reasonable procedure. Is it possible to prove that all local-correction functions are computable by a reasonable procedure, or alternatively to provide some theory which would at least allow us to identify those local-correction functions which are?

In Chapter 4 we also proved that an $r$-local-correctable $(2r+1)$-local-linearisation function was $(r+1)$-selective-local-correctable. It seems clear that some linearisations which are exactly $r$-local-correctable are more than $(r+1)$-selective-local-correctable. What are the identifying characteristics of such linearisation functions?
More generally, what is the relationship between local correction algorithms and other types of correction algorithm? Should we be developing correction algorithms that are designed to operate "correctly" under worst-case scenarios, rather than developing correction algorithms which meet other objectives? Perhaps no assumption should be made about the number of errors encountered by a correction procedure, in the hope that we might develop algorithms with good probabilistic behaviour, or algorithms capable of always transforming damaged instances into the nearest correct and seemingly valid instance. Since it is not known how to construct such correction algorithms, or even if the construction of such algorithms is feasible, this would be an interesting area for further research.

Historically, the Valid State Hypothesis has been used primarily when attempting to prove the correctness of algorithms that relied on it. However, many of the algorithms presented in this dissertation actively use the assumption that the Valid State Hypothesis holds to assist in performing correction. There is therefore a need for a theory which would identify the effect that the Valid State Hypothesis has on the correctability of an arbitrary structure.

In this dissertation we assumed that correction algorithms had no external knowledge about the cause of errors, or the possible propagation of errors, and that they therefore had to assume at best some probabilistic distribution of errors within the structure being corrected. However, often the cause of errors can be externally identified, or the propagation of errors carefully controlled. It would therefore be of interest to investigate the properties of robust storage structures when subjected to such restrictive classes of errors, and to attempt to design good algorithms for handling such errors. Most notably, power failures, deadlock, and user-initiated interruption can often lead to partially completed updates within robust storage structures. How should correction algorithms attempt to correct such errors within a single robust storage structure, and more generally how should correction algorithms rectify partially completed updates applied to composite storage structures?

Methods of simulating the types of error that arise as a result of incorrect concurrency control should also be investigated. It would be of interest to develop code that simulated this type of error, and to consider the possible consequences of
allowing error correction to be performed concurrently with other forms of update.

Finally, the most ambitious researchers might attempt to unify the theoretical results which pertain to robust storage structures with the theory of error-correcting codes, and/or the theory of detection and correction of errors in hardware components and systems. There are many superficial similarities between these fields, and much can be learned from studying all three. In particular, if storage structure errors could be modelled using any of the existing models for hardware error detection and correction, then a huge body of accumulated knowledge would suddenly become available to the designers of robust storage structures.
### APPENDIX A1
A tertiary perfect Hamming code

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX A2
A quaternary perfect Hamming code

| 0 0 0 0 0 | 0 0 0 | 2 0 0 0 | 2 1 |
| 0 0 1 1 1 | 0 0 1 | 2 0 1 1 | 3 0 |
| 0 0 2 2 2 | 0 2 0 2 | 0 0 3 | 1 2 |
| 0 0 3 3 3 | 0 3 0 3 | 2 1 0 | 3 3 |
| 0 1 0 1 2 | 0 1 1 1 | 2 1 1 | 2 2 |
| 0 1 1 0 3 | 0 1 2 1 | 2 1 2 | 1 1 |
| 0 1 2 3 0 | 0 3 0 3 | 2 1 3 | 0 0 |
| 0 1 3 2 1 | 0 3 0 3 | 2 2 0 | 0 2 |
| 0 2 0 2 3 | 0 2 0 2 | 2 2 1 | 1 3 |
| 0 2 1 3 2 | 0 2 0 2 | 2 2 2 | 2 0 |
| 0 2 2 0 1 | 0 2 0 2 | 2 2 3 | 3 1 |
| 0 2 3 1 0 | 0 2 0 2 | 2 3 0 | 1 0 |
| 0 3 0 3 1 | 0 3 0 3 | 2 3 1 | 0 1 |
| 0 3 1 2 0 | 0 3 0 3 | 2 3 1 | 0 1 |
| 0 3 2 1 3 | 0 3 0 3 | 2 3 2 | 3 2 |
| 0 3 3 0 2 | 0 3 0 3 | 2 3 3 | 2 3 |
| 1 0 0 1 3 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 0 0 | 3 2 |
| 1 0 1 0 2 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 0 1 | 2 3 |
| 1 0 2 3 1 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 0 2 | 1 0 |
| 1 0 3 2 0 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 0 3 | 0 1 |
| 1 1 0 0 1 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 1 0 | 2 0 |
| 1 1 1 1 0 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 1 1 | 3 1 |
| 1 1 2 2 3 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 1 2 | 0 2 |
| 1 1 3 3 2 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 1 3 | 1 3 |
| 1 2 0 3 0 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 2 0 | 1 1 |
| 1 2 1 2 1 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 2 1 | 0 0 |
| 1 2 2 1 2 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 2 2 | 3 3 |
| 1 2 3 0 3 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 2 3 | 2 2 |
| 1 3 0 2 2 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 3 0 | 0 3 |
| 1 3 1 3 3 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 3 1 | 1 2 |
| 1 3 2 0 3 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 3 2 | 2 1 |
| 1 3 3 1 1 | 0 1 3 0 | 3 3 3 | 3 0 |
**APPENDIX B1**

**Pseudocode for mod(k≥3) correction algorithm**

```plaintext
correct_headers(); /* Terminate if null instance */
for (count = 0; count < max_possible; count = count + 1) {
    candidates = 0;
    for (i = 0; i < 3; i = i + 1) {
        N_x = N_{1-k+i} \cdot b_k \cdot f_{1-i}^{i-1}; /* For simplicity, assume N_x exists */
        if (N_x ≠ any candidate[j]) {
            j = candidates++; candidate[j] = N_x; vote[j] = 0; }
        vote[j] = vote[j] + weight[i]; } /* weight[i] = {1/4, 3/16, 1/16} */
    for (i = 0; i < candidates; i = i + 1) { /* Apply diagnostic votes */
        N_x = candidate[i];
        if (N_x \cdot f_1 = N_0) vote[i] = vote[i] + 1/4;
        if (N_x \cdot b_k \cdot f_1 = N_0 \cdot b_k) vote[i] = vote[i] + 3/16;
        if (N_x \cdot b_k \cdot f_1^2 = N_{-1} \cdot b_k) vote[i] = vote[i] + 1/16;
        if (N_x = any N_{0≥j≥k}) vote[i] = 0; }
    case 'Only N_a got vote > 1/2': break;
    case 'Only N_a got vote of 1/2':
        if (candidates = 1) {
            if (N_a \cdot id bad or N_a \cdot b_k \cdot f_1^{k} ok) abort(Target disconnected);
            break; }
        if (N_a \cdot f_1 = N_0 and N_a = N_{2-k} \cdot b_k and N_a = N_{3-k} \cdot b_k \cdot f_1) {
            if (k = 3) abort(Target may be disconnected);
            if (N_{4-k} \cdot b_k \cdot f_1 = N_{3-k} \cdot b_k) abort(Target disconnected); }
    case 'Only N_a and N_b got vote of 1/2':
        if (N_a \cdot f_1 ≠ N_b \cdot f_1) {
            if (N_b \cdot f_1 = N_0) N_a = N_b;
        } else if (N_b \cdot b_k = N_a) N_a = N_b;
    case 'Otherwise': abort(Target disconnected); /* N_a is target node N_1 */
    N_{1-k} \cdot b_k = N_a; N_a \cdot id = id; N_a \cdot f_1 = N_0; /* Assignments may be unnecessary */
    if (N_a = last header) correct_count(); /* Terminate successfully */
}
abort(Algorithm looping); 135
```
APPENDIX B2

Pseudocode for helix(k>=3) correction algorithm

correct_headers(); /* Terminate if null instance */
for (count = 0; count < max_possible; count = count+1) {
    candidates = 0;
    for (i = 0; i < k; i = i+1) {
        /* Apply constructive votes */
        case 'i = 0': \(N_x = N_0 \cdot b_2 \cdot f_1\); /* For simplicity, assume \(N_x\) exists */
        case 'i = k': \(N_x = N_{2-k} \cdot b_k \cdot f_1\);
        case 'default': \(N_x = N_{-i} \cdot b_{i+1}\);
        if (\(N_x\) is any candidate[j]) {
            j = candidates++; candidate[j] = \(N_x\); vote[j] = 0;
        }
        if (i != 0) vote[j] = vote[j] + 1; /* \(N_x\) is candidate[j] */
    }
    for (i = 0; i < candidates; i = i+1) {
        /* Apply diagnostic votes */
        \(N_x = \) candidate[i];
        for (j = 1; j < k; j = j+1) {
            case 'j = 1': if (\(N_x \cdot f_1 = N_0\)) vote[i] = vote[i] + 1;
            case 'j = k': if (\(N_x \cdot b_k = N_0 \cdot b_2 \cdot b_{k-1}\)) vote[i] = vote[i] + 1;
            case 'default': if (\(N_x \cdot b_i = N_0 \cdot b_{i+1}\)) vote[i] = vote[i] + 1;
        }
        if (\(N_x = N_j\), for any \(0 \leq j \leq 1-k\), vote[i] = 0;)
    }
    case 'Only \(N_a\) has > k votes': break;
    case 'Only \(N_a\) has k votes':
        if (candidates = 1) {
            if (\(N_a \cdot id\) bad or \(N_a = N_{2-k} \cdot b_k\) or \(N_a \cdot f_1 = N_a\),
                or \(N_a \cdot f_1 \cdot b_k \cdot f_1 = N_a\) without cycles) abort(Target disconnected);}
        else if (\(N_a \cdot f_1 = N_0\) and \(N_a = N_{1-k} \cdot b_k\) and \(N_a = N_{2-k} \cdot b_{k-1}\)) {
            if (\(k = 3\)) abort(Target may be disconnected);
            if (\(N_a = N_{-1} \cdot b_3\)) abort(Target disconnected);}
    case '\(N_a\) and \(N_b\) have k votes':
        if (\(N_a \cdot f_1 \neq N_b \cdot f_1\)) {
            if (\(N_b \cdot f_1 = N_0\)) \(N_a = N_b;\)}
        else if (\(N_a = N_{2-k} \cdot b_k\) \(N_a = N_b;\)
    case 'Otherwise': abort(Target disconnected);
    \(N_a \cdot id = id; N_a \cdot f_1 = N_0;\) /* \(N_a\) is the target node \(N_1\) */
    for (i = 2; i <= k; i = i+1) \(N_{1-i} \cdot b_i = N_a;\) /* Assignments may be unnecessary */
    if (\(N_a = \) last header) correct_count();} /* Terminate successfully */
abort(Algorithm looping);
APPENDIX C1
Empirical results for double-linked list structures

C1.1. Explanation

This appendix presents empirical results obtained when "random" errors were introduced into double-linked lists, a mod(2) structure, a mod(3) structure, and a mod(4) structure. Each instance contained 100 consecutively located nodes plus headers. Increasing numbers of pointers were randomly selected from within this instance, and modified by adding or subtracting a random number between 1 and 10. Because the instances being considered were small, the probability that errors caused disconnection was high. Because pointers were modified by a small amount, the probability that votes supported common incorrect candidates was high. This appendix is therefore somewhat pessimistic.

Since a standard (+1,−1) double-linked list is not locally correctable, two distinct methods were used to produce a locally correctable (+1,−1) linked list. Both methods employed a forward traversal. The first method added two checksum components, of the same size as the pointer components, to each node in the instance being corrected. A generalised perfect tertiary hamming code [21], presented in Appendix A1, then allowed single errors within nodes to be corrected. The algorithm reported failure if more than one component within a node required correction. The algorithm also reported failure if the (possibly corrected) back pointer in the current node failed to address the previous visited node.

The other method of producing such a list used two consecutive header nodes and stored \( N_{x+1} \oplus N_{x-1} \), rather than \( N_{x-1} \), in a virtual backpointer component, \( N_x \cdot v \) [80]. Local correction in this VDLL structure was accomplished by using two constructive votes, \( N_x \cdot f_1 \) and \( N_x \cdot v \oplus N_{x-1} \), together with a diagnostic vote, \( N_n \cdot id=id \ & N_n \cdot f_1 \oplus N_n \cdot v=N_x \), to identify the target node \( N_{x+1} \).

For the mod(2) instance, correction was attempted using a historical mod(\( k \)) 1-local-correction algorithm, which used the votes \( N_1=N_{1-k} \cdot b_k, N_1=N_{2-k} \cdot b_k \cdot f_1, \) and \( N_1 \cdot f_1=N_0 \), the mod(2) local correction algorithm presented in [122], and the spiral
local correction algorithm presented in [20]. For the mod(3) and mod(4) instances, correction was attempted using the mod(k) local correction algorithm, and the selective-local-correction algorithm described in Chapter 5 and Appendix B1.

Each mod(k) algorithm was executed on exactly the same “randomly” damaged instances. Each test was performed 1000 times before the number of pointers being damaged was increased. Statistics were collected on the number of times that the damaged instance remained connected, and was thus potentially correctable. Statistics were also collected on the number of times each algorithm was able to correct the structure, and the number of times that each algorithm was misled into attempting to apply an incorrect change.

**Mod(1) results**

![Graph showing Mod(1) results]

Legend:
- VDLL structure connected
- VDLL algorithm
- Checksum algorithm

Errors introduced: 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30

Corrected, Connected, Misled
Mod(2) results

Legend:
- Instance connected
- Mod(2) algorithm
- Mod(k) algorithm
- Spiral algorithm

Mod(3) results

Legend:
- Instance connected
- New algorithm
- Mod(k) algorithm
When the double-linked list was protected by using an error-correcting code, nodes contained no identifier field, but still contained one additional component not present in the other structures considered. When compared to alternative robust linked lists requiring the same amount of storage space, the checksummed double-linked list performed rather poorly. Comparable results for the spiral(3) and helix(3) storage structures are presented in Appendix C2 and Appendix E2.

The VDLL structure performed very well. Empirical results suggest that it is as strongly connected as the mod(3) structure, and that its correction algorithm is competitive with the historical correction algorithms used to correct mod(k) structures.

While the behaviour of the mod(k) local-correction algorithm is similar to the spiral(2) local-correction algorithm, and to a lesser extent the selective-local-correction algorithm presented in Chapter 5, the mod(2) local-correction algorithm is quite different, since it uses two parallel traversals of the instance, and an elaborate
fault dictionary to assist in correction. It is therefore surprising that the results of attempting to correct a mod(2) instance are almost identical, regardless of the algorithm used.

Under the various errors introduced, the mod(2) structure remained connected 44% of the time, the mod(3) structure 55% of the time, the VDLL structure 56% of the time, and the mod(4) structure 60% of the time. The VDLL correction algorithm corrected 26% of all errors, as did the mod(k) correction algorithm when operating on mod(2), mod(3), and mod(4) linked list structures.

Superficially it appears that the local correction algorithm outlined in Appendix B1 should correct more errors in a mod(k≥4) structure than in a mod(3) structure. However the locality, in which it is assumed that at most two errors occur, is smaller in a mod(3) structure than in a mod(k≥4) structure, and this becomes significant when many errors are introduced into the instance being corrected. It is therefore not surprising that this algorithm corrected 40% of errors in mod(3) instances, and 38% of errors in mod(4) instances.

The statistics presented above are very dependent on the number of errors introduced into the instance, the type of error introduced, and the size of the instance being damaged. However, these statistics provided some assurance that the selective-local-correction algorithm outlined in Appendix B1 is indeed superior to algorithms previously presented, when applied to a mod(k≥3) structure.
APPENDIX C2
Empirical results for multi-linked list structures

C2.1. Explanation

This appendix presents empirical results obtained when “random” errors were introduced into instances of a helix(3), helix(4), spiral(3), and spiral(4) structure.

Each instance contained 100 consecutively located nodes plus headers. Increasing numbers of pointers were randomly selected from within this instance, and modified by adding or subtracting a random number between 1 and 10.

The spiral($k$) instances were corrected using the spiral correction algorithm described in [20]. This algorithm used the following votes to correct up to $k-1$ errors in any locality. If a single candidate received $k+1$ or more votes the algorithm concluded that this node was the target. Otherwise the algorithm reported failure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vote</th>
<th>Path followed</th>
<th>Compared with</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$C_{i}, 1 \leq i &lt; k$</td>
<td>$N_{1+i-k} \cdot b_i \cdot f_j$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_k$</td>
<td>$N_{1-k} \cdot b_k$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$D_{i}, 1 \leq i &lt; k$</td>
<td>$N_{2} \cdot f_i$</td>
<td>$N_{1-i}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unfortunately since the spiral and helix structures are different, it was impossible to execute the correction algorithms on the same “randomly” damaged instances. Thus the errors applied to each instance were related only by the above constraints. Each test was performed 1000 times on each instance before the number of pointers being damaged was increased. Statistics were collected on the number of times that each damaged instance remained connected, and was thus potentially correctable. Statistics were also collected on the number of times the appropriate algorithm was able to correct the instance presented to it, and the number of times that each algorithm attempted to apply an incorrect change.
Spiral(3) and Helix(3) Results

Spiral(4) and Helix(4) Results

Legend:
--- Helix(3) connected  --- Helix(k) algorithm
. Spiral(3) connected  . Spiral(k) algorithm
C2.2. Comments

Under the various errors introduced, the helix(3) structure remained connected 85% of the time and the spiral(3) structure 84% of the time. The helix(4) and spiral(4) structures remained connected 99% of the time.

The helix(3) structure was corrected 54% of the time while the spiral(3) structure was corrected only 36% of the time. Similarly, the helix(4) structure was corrected 83% of the time, but the spiral(4) structure only 66% of the time. More informally, in the experiments conducted, the helix(k) algorithm generally behaved as well as the spiral(k) correction algorithm, even when the structures that it was correcting contained an additional 10 errors.

Somewhat surprisingly, the helix correction algorithm attempted more erroneous corrections than the spiral correction algorithm. In the helix(3) structure 111 erroneous corrections were attempted compared to 33 in the spiral(3) structure. Similarly, in the helix(4) structure 2 erroneous corrections were attempted compared to none in the spiral(4) structure. Various factors seem to have contributed to this discrepancy. Since the spiral correction algorithm failed more often, it encountered fewer errors, and thus had less opportunity to be misled. In addition, the helix correction algorithm could be misled when an incorrect candidate receives $k$ votes, while the spiral correction algorithm could be misled only if an incorrect candidate receives at least $k+1$ votes. This became particularly significant when constructive votes supported nodes outside of the instance being corrected. Given the nature of the diagnostic votes used, and the fact that only components within the instance were damaged, such nodes receive no diagnostic votes from the spiral correction algorithm, but could receive up to $k-1$ diagnostic votes from the helix correction algorithm.

Although the spiral(3) and helix(3) structures are naturally much more robust than the mod(3) structure, since each node in a mod(k) structure contains only the two pointers $f_1$ and $b_k$, it is of some interest to compare the results presented above with those presented in Appendix C1. Therefore, instances of the helix(3) and spiral(3) structure containing more than 30 damaged pointers will be ignored. Under this scenario the spiral(3) and helix(3) structures remained connected 98% of the time. The helix(3) instances were corrected 90% of the time, and the spiral(3) instances 70% of the time.
APPENDIX D
The unperturbed constant error model

D.1. Explanation

This appendix graphs the behaviour of functions, derived in Chapter 8, which pertain to the unperturbed constant error model. This model assumes that \( n \) components in an instance state are traversed in some sequence, and that \( e \) randomly selected components initially contain errors. It further assumes that the order in which components are traversed is unperturbed by the correction of erroneous components.

We then assume that the local-linearisation function, being used to detect or correct errors in these components, produces linearisations which violate the locality constraint if and only if some subsequence of \( m \) components contains more than one error.

Superficially, it might appear that the above assumptions are reasonable when considering the behaviour of a 1-local-detection procedure, and that therefore the results presented here can be used to predict the behaviour of such algorithms. However, in the vast majority of cases, local detection will be accomplished successfully even when localities contain an arbitrary number of errors. This is because, typically, such erroneous localities will not be internally consistent. The results presented here therefore provide very pessimistic predictions of the behaviour of 1-local-detection procedures.

The unperturbed constant error model is more useful when attempting to understand the behaviour of a 1-local-correction procedure. Specifically, when 1-local-correction procedures use linearisations which always contain exactly \( m \) untrusted components, we will assume that an instance state is locally correctable, if and only if no subsequence (or window) of \( m \) consecutive components contains more than one error.

Graphs are presented in pairs, the first being a linear graph for small numbers of components, and the second using a logarithmic scale to depict results for large numbers of components.
The first four sets of graphs plot the relationship between \( n \), \( e \) and \( \left( \frac{n-(m-1)*(e-1)}{e} \right) / \binom{n}{e} \) for \( m=5 \), \( m=10 \), \( m=20 \), and \( m=40 \). This formula expresses the probability that no subsequence of \( m \) components contains more than one error, given that exactly \( e \) errors occur in a sequence of \( n \) components.

These graphs suggest that when the size of a correction locality is quadrupled and the number of errors introduced into the structure reduced by half, similar results are obtained. Currently, this behaviour is not well understood. However, it is important since it implies that local-correction algorithms will perform reasonably well, even when they use large correction localities.

The last pair of graphs plots the relationship between \( m \), \( n \), and \( \sum_{e=1}^{n} \left( \frac{n-(m-1)*(e-1)}{e} \right) / \binom{n}{e} \). This formula expresses the expected number of errors that can be placed in a sequence of \( n \) components, while placing no more than one error in any subsequence of \( m \) components.

These graphs suggest that the expected number of correctable errors does not increase linearly as storage structures grow. This is not surprising and indicates that the ratio of correctable errors to total components will decrease as structures grow. However, the expected number of correctable errors increases almost linearly when \( n \) is large, and clearly increases more rapidly than \( \log n \). Thus, local-correction algorithms can be expected to perform very well when operating on large storage structures containing unrelated sets of errors.
At most 1 error in any 5-component locality

![Graph showing the probability of at most 1 error in any 5-component locality for different values of total error (e). The graph is for different components ranging from 0 to 3000 and from 100 to 100000.](image-url)
At most 1 error in any 10-component locality

Components
At most 1 error in any 20-component locality

Graph showing the probability of at most 1 error for different component counts and error rates.

- At most 1 error in any 20-component locality
- Components range from 0 to 3000
- Probability range from 0.00 to 1.00

Error rates: e=2, e=4, e=8, e=16
At most 1 error in any 40-component locality
Expected number of correctable errors

\[ \begin{align*}
    m = 5 \\
    m = 10 \\
    m = 20 \\
    m = 40
\end{align*} \]

Components

\[ \begin{align*}
    0 & \quad 200 & \quad 400 & \quad 600 & \quad 800 & \quad 1000 & \quad 1200 & \quad 1400 & \quad 1600 & \quad 1800 & \quad 2000 & \quad 2200 & \quad 2400 & \quad 2600 & \quad 2800 & \quad 3000 \\
    100 & \quad 175 & \quad 300 & \quad 500 & \quad 1000 & \quad 3000 & \quad 10000 & \quad 30000 & \quad 100000
\end{align*} \]
APPENDIX E
Analysis of connectivity using Markov models

E.1. Explanation

This appendix uses Markov models to present results pertaining to the connectivity of a number of storage structures, and compares these results with empirical data. Beginning in state 0, each model simulates an algorithm attempting to traverse a particular storage structure, in which errors occur with constant probability $p$. The Markov model uses the expression $z^n$, containing the dummy variable $z$, to indicate the successful traversal of $n$ consecutive nodes.

Each Markov model is then transformed into a generating function, describing the overall transition from the start state to a final state. These generating functions are not presented, since they can easily be reconstructed from the Markov model. In all but the simplest structures, these generating functions are rather complex, and not easily depicted.

We will study two issues. Firstly, in order to remain compatible with the results presented in Appendix C, we will determine, for various structures and values of $p$, the expected number of instances that remain connected, given that we examine 1000 instances, each containing 100 data nodes. The results of this study will be compared with empirical data. Secondly, we will determine, for various structures and values of $p$, the expected number of nodes traversed prior to detecting disconnection, given that we are examining an instance containing at least this number of nodes. All of these results will be presented graphically.

Let $G$ be a generating function whose coefficient of $z^n$ indicates the probability that exactly $n$ nodes can be reached from the headers of an instance. Then the number of instances out of 1000 which remain connected, and the expected number of nodes traversed at the point when disconnection is first detected, is calculated using the following 'Maple' code.
# Instances remaining connected out of 1000
O := proc(a) 0 end:

nodes := 100:

for p from .005 by .005 to .15 do
  z := 'z':
  failed := taylor(G,z,nodes)*1000:
  z := 1:
  print(p, evalf(1000-failed)):
od:

# Expected number of nodes traversed
result := diff(G,z):

z := 1:
for p from .005 by .005 to .15 do
  print(p, evalf(result)):
od:

E.2. Markov models for linked lists

The Markov models used to study the connectivity of linked lists simulate a backwards traversal from the headers of the instance, iteratively selecting with probability $q_i$ some transition generating function, $q_i z^n$, indicating that the simulation has successfully retreated backwards from $N_{x+n}$ to $N_x$, visiting in the process all intermediate nodes. If it is discovered that the model cannot proceed backwards because $N_x$ is disconnected then the model enters a final state. Otherwise, when it becomes impossible to arrive at $N_x$ by traversing the linked list backwards, the model simulates a forward traversal from the headers of the instance, iteratively selects with probability $q_f$ some transition generating function $q_f z^m$ which indicates that we can advance forward from $N_{x-m}$ to $N_x$ once again visiting in the process all intermediate nodes. This forward traversal terminates when it is determined that some node is disconnected.

Each of the following tables contains four columns. The first two columns describe a possible transition between a state and an adjacent state. The third column provides the generating function associated with this transition, and the fourth column indicates when this transition occurs. State 0 represents the start state, and state -1 the final state.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Next State</th>
<th>Generating Function</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x+1} \cdot b_1 = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x+1} \cdot b_1 \neq N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_x]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Virtual double-linked list (VDLL)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Next State</th>
<th>Generating Function</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot \oplus N_{x+2} = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot \oplus N_{x-2} = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_x]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mod(2) linked list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Next State</th>
<th>Generating Function</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x+2} \cdot b_2 = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x+2} \cdot b_2 \neq N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>[1-p]</td>
<td>[N_{x+1} \cdot b_2 = N_{x-1}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x+1} \cdot b_2 \neq N_{x-1}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_x]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mod(3) linked list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Next State</th>
<th>Generating Function</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x+3} \cdot b_3 = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x+3} \cdot b_3 \neq N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>[1-p]</td>
<td>[N_{x+2} \cdot b_3 = N_{x-1}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x+2} \cdot b_3 \neq N_{x-1}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>[1-p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-1}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-1}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>[1-p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot b_4 = N_{x-3}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot b_4 \neq N_{x-3}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_x]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mod(4) linked list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Next State</th>
<th>Generating Function</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x+4} \cdot b_4 = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x+4} \cdot b_4 \neq N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>[1-p]</td>
<td>[N_{x+3} \cdot b_4 = N_{x-1}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x+3} \cdot b_4 \neq N_{x-1}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>[1-p]</td>
<td>[N_{x+2} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-2}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x+2} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-2}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>[1-p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-1}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-1}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>[1-p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot b_4 = N_{x-3}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot b_4 \neq N_{x-3}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>[z(1-p)]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_x]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(z(1-p))</td>
<td>(N_{x+3}b_3=N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>(N_{x+3}b_3\neq N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>(1-p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+2}b_2=N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(z^2(1-p))</td>
<td>(N_{x-1}f_1=N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x-1}f_1\neq N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>(1-p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+1}b_3\neq N_{x+2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+2}f_1\neq N_{x+1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(z^3(1-p))</td>
<td>(N_{x-1}f_1=N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x-1}f_1\neq N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>(z(1-p))</td>
<td>(N_{x-1}f_1=N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x-1}f_1\neq N_x)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>(z(1-p))</th>
<th>(N_{x+4}b_4=N_x)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>(N_{x+4}b_4\neq N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(z(1-p))</td>
<td>(N_{x+3}b_3=N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>(1-p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+3}b_3\neq N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>(1-p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+3}b_4\neq N_{x-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+3}b_4\neq N_{x-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(z^2(1-p))</td>
<td>(N_{x-1}f_1=N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x-1}f_1\neq N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>(1-p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+2}b_3=N_{x-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>(1-p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+2}b_3\neq N_{x-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>(1-p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+1}b_2=N_{x-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+1}b_2\neq N_{x-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>(1-p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+2}b_4=N_{x-2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+2}b_4\neq N_{x-2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>(1-p)</td>
<td>(N_{x-2}f_1=N_{x-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x-2}f_1\neq N_{x-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>(1-p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+1}b_3=N_{x-2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+1}b_3\neq N_{x-2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(z^3(1-p))</td>
<td>(N_{x-1}f_1=N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x-1}f_1\neq N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>(1-p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+1}b_4=N_{x-3})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x+1}b_4\neq N_{x-3})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>(1-p)</td>
<td>(N_{x-3}f_1=N_{x-2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x-3}f_1\neq N_{x-2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>(z(1-p))</td>
<td>(N_{x-1}f_1=N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x-1}f_1\neq N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>(1-p)</td>
<td>(N_{x-2}f_1=N_{x-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x-2}f_1\neq N_{x-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(z^4(1-p))</td>
<td>(N_{x-1}f_1=N_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p)</td>
<td>(N_{x-1}f_1\neq N_x)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
E.3. Markov model for binary trees

We also present the results of using Markov models to study the connectivity of the checksummed binary tree described in Chapter 4, and the sibling-linked binary tree described in Chapter 7. In the checksummed binary tree we consider a child node connected if either the link addressing it is correct or no other errors occur in the parent node, thus allowing this erroneous link to be corrected.

As justified in Lemma 8.3, in a binary tree created by random insertion, the probability of encountering a leaf node is \( \frac{n+1}{3n} \), the probability of encountering an incomplete node is the same, and the probability of encountering a full node is \( \frac{n-2}{3n} \). In the Markov models we will assume that \( n \) is large and therefore use 1/3 to approximate each of the above three probabilities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>This State</th>
<th>Next State</th>
<th>Generating Function</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>At leaf node - select another node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>At an incomplete node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( z(1-p) )</td>
<td>Link correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>( p )</td>
<td>Link contains an error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>( (1-p) )</td>
<td>No error in 2nd component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>( p )</td>
<td>Two errors in node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>( (1-p) )</td>
<td>No error in 3rd component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>( p )</td>
<td>Two errors in node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>( (1-p) )</td>
<td>No error in 4th component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>( p )</td>
<td>Two errors in node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( z(1-p) )</td>
<td>Only one error in 5 components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>( p )</td>
<td>Two errors in node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>( z(1-p) )</td>
<td>Left link correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>( p )</td>
<td>Left link in error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( z(1-p) )</td>
<td>Left link correct - Right link correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>( p )</td>
<td>Left link correct - Right link in error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>( z(1-p) )</td>
<td>Left link in error - Right link correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>( p )</td>
<td>Two errors in node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sibling-linked binary tree</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0  0  1/3  (z(1-p))</td>
<td>At a leaf node - select another node</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0  1  1/3  (z(1-p))</td>
<td>At an incomplete node</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0  3  1/3  (z(1-p))</td>
<td>At a full node</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1  0  (z(1-p))</td>
<td>Single child addressed by left link</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1  2  (p)</td>
<td>Single child not addressed by left link</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2  0  (z(1-p))</td>
<td>Single child addressed by right link</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2  -1  (p)</td>
<td>Single child disconnected</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3  4  (z(1-p))</td>
<td>Left link correct</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3  5  (p)</td>
<td>Left link in error</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4  0  (z(1-p))</td>
<td>Right link correct</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4  6  (p)</td>
<td>Left link correct - Right link in error</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5  6  (z(1-p))</td>
<td>Left link in error - Right link correct</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5  -1  (p)</td>
<td>Both links contain errors</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6  0  (z(1-p))</td>
<td>Other child addressed by arc pointer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6  -1  (p)</td>
<td>Other child disconnected</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**E.4. Graphs**

In the following graphs, predicted results were obtained using Markov models and the Maple code presented at the beginning of this appendix. The observed results were obtained from corresponding empirical studies. In the empirical studies, storage structure instances contained 100 data nodes. Binary trees contained approximately the same number of full, incomplete, and leaf nodes, but no effort was made to ensure that these trees were balanced. Pointers, and when appropriate checksums, in each storage structure instance were assigned arbitrary incorrect values with the indicated constant probability and a test performed to determine if the instance remained connected. This test was repeated 1000 times and the total number of times that the instance remained connected recorded. This exercise was repeated under a variety of different error probabilities.

Empirical results were not obtained for the expected number of nodes capable of being traversed in large structures, given that components contained errors with constant probability. Such empirical studies would have required considerable computing resources, since large storage structures were involved, and probably would not have produced any significant new results.
Legend:

- Predicted
- Observed

Mod(3) Connected

Mod(4) Connected

Probability of error
APPENDIX F
Analysis of local correction using Markov models

F.1. Explanation

This appendix analyses the behaviour of some of the local correction algorithms described in Chapters 4, 5, and 7, using the techniques described in Chapter 8 and Appendix E. We will study two issues. Firstly, in order to remain compatible with the results presented in Appendix C, we will determine the expected number of instances that can be corrected, given that we attempt local correction on 1000 instances, each containing 100 data nodes, when selected components have a constant probability, $p$, of being in error. In our Markov models we assume that multiple errors do not conspire to assist or mislead correction algorithms. The results of this study will be compared with empirical data.

Secondly, we will determine, for various values of $p$, the expected number of nodes traversed by correction algorithms prior to failing, given that we are examining an instance containing at least this number of nodes. All of these results will be presented graphically.

F.2. Markov models for linked lists

We will compare local correction algorithms operating on a number of different unkeyed double-linked list structures. These structures are the checksummed double-linked list containing two additional checksum components, the virtual double-linked list (VDLL) [80], the mod(2) linked list, and the mod(3) linked list. Each node in the checksummed double-linked list was corrected by using the error correcting code presented in Appendix A1. The VDLL structure was corrected as described in [80], and the mod(2) linked list was corrected using the historical 1-local-correction algorithm described in Appendix C. The mod(3) linked list was corrected using the 2-selective-local-correction algorithm described in Chapter 5.

In each of the Markov models presented below we assume that local correction is attempting to determine the correct address of node $N_x$. If the correct address of this node cannot be determined, because of the errors in the correction locality, then
the Markov model enters a final state. Otherwise the Markov model proceeds through all subsequent nodes whose addresses are necessarily identifiable given the errors in the locality, before trying to determine the address of some new $N_x$.

Somewhat surprisingly, the Markov model for performing local correction of the virtual double linked list was discovered to be identical to the Markov model for performing local correction in the mod(2) linked list. Results are not therefore presented for the local correction of virtual double linked lists.

Although we succeeded in producing a Markov model for the helix(3) local correction algorithm, the generating function produced from the helix(3) Markov model exceeded 100,000 characters, and was computationally intractable using available computing facilities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>This State</th>
<th>Next State</th>
<th>Generating Function</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$1-p$</td>
<td>1st component correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>Error in 1st component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>$1-p$</td>
<td>Components 1 and 2 ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>Component 1 ok, 2 bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>$1-p$</td>
<td>Component 1 bad, 2 ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>Components 1 and 2 bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>$1-p$</td>
<td>Components 1, 2 and 3 ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>Components 1 and 2 ok, 3 bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>$1-p$</td>
<td>Components 1 and 3 ok, 2 bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>Components 2 and 3 bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>$1-p$</td>
<td>Components 2 and 3 ok, 1 bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>Components 1 and 3 bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$z(1-p)$</td>
<td>All components correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$zp$</td>
<td>Only component 4 bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$z(1-p)$</td>
<td>Only component 3 bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>Components 3 and 4 bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$z(1-p)$</td>
<td>Only component 2 bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>Components 2 and 4 bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$z(1-p)$</td>
<td>Only component 1 bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>Components 1 and 4 bad</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 1-local-correction of Virtual double-linked list (VDLL)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Transition</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1-p</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_x$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>$z(1-p)$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot v \oplus N_{x-2} = N_x$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot v \oplus N_{x-2} \neq N_x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot v \oplus N_{x-2} = N_x$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot v \oplus N_{x-2} \neq N_x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1-p</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot v \oplus N_{x-2} = N_x$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot v \oplus N_{x-2} \neq N_x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_{x+1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x+1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot v \oplus N_{x} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot v \oplus N_{x} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot v \oplus N_{x} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot v \oplus N_{x} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1-local-correction of $\text{Mod}(k \geq 2)$ linked list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Transition</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1-p</td>
<td>$N_{x+k} \cdot b_k = N_x$</td>
<td>$N_{x+k} \cdot b_k \neq N_x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>$z(1-p)$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 = N_{x+1}$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x+1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 = N_{x+1}$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x+1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1-p</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 = N_{x+1}$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x+1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 = N_{x+1}$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x+1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$N_{x+k-1} \cdot b_k = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x+k-1} \cdot b_k \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$N_{x+k-1} \cdot b_k = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x+k-1} \cdot b_k \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_{x}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_{x}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2-selective-local-correction of $\text{Mod}(3)$ linked list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Transition</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1-p</td>
<td>$N_{x+3} \cdot b_3 = N_x$</td>
<td>$N_{x+3} \cdot b_3 \neq N_x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>$N_{x+3} \cdot b_3 \neq N_x$</td>
<td>$N_{x+3} \cdot b_3 \neq N_x$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>$z(1-p)$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 = N_{x+1}$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x+1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 = N_{x+1}$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x+1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1-p</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 = N_{x+1}$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x+1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 = N_{x+1}$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x+1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} \cdot b_3 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} \cdot b_3 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} \cdot b_3 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} \cdot b_3 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} \cdot b_3 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} \cdot b_3 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} \cdot b_3 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} \cdot b_3 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} \cdot b_3 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} \cdot b_3 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>$p$</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} \cdot b_3 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} \cdot b_3 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_{x}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_{x}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_{x}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_{x}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_{x}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 = N_{x}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} \cdot b_3 = N_{x-2}$</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} \cdot b_3 \neq N_{x-2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} \cdot b_3 = N_{x-2}$</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} \cdot b_3 \neq N_{x-2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} \cdot b_3 = N_{x-2}$</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} \cdot b_3 \neq N_{x-2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} \cdot b_3 = N_{x-2}$</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} \cdot b_3 \neq N_{x-2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$z^3(1-p)$</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-2} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot b_3 = N_{x-3}$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot b_3 \neq N_{x-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot b_3 = N_{x-3}$</td>
<td>$N_x \cdot b_3 \neq N_{x-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>$z^2(1-p)$</td>
<td>$N_{x-3} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$N_{x-3} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-2}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-3} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$z^4(1-p)$</td>
<td>$N_{x-3} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>$N_{x-3} \cdot f_1 = N_{x-2}$</td>
<td>$N_{x-3} \cdot f_1 \neq N_{x-2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 1</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x+3} b_3 = N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 2</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x+3} b_3 \neq N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 3</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} b_2 = N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 4</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} b_2 \neq N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 4</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} b_2 = N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 5</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} b_2 \neq N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 0</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_x f_1 = N_{x+1}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 6</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_x f_1 \neq N_{x+1}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 6</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_x f_1 = N_{x+1}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 7</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_x f_1 \neq N_{x+1}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 8</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} f_1 = N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 -1</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} f_1 \neq N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 9</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} b_3 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 10</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} b_3 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 11</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} b_3 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 12</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} b_3 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 13</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} b_3 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 14</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} b_3 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 3</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} f_1 = N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 16</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} f_1 \neq N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 17</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} b_3 = N_{x-2}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 18</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} b_3 \neq N_{x-2}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 19</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} f_1 = N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 20</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} f_1 \neq N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 21</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} b_3 = N_{x-2}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 -1</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} b_3 \neq N_{x-2}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 22</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} b_3 = N_{x-1}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 23</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} b_3 \neq N_{x-1}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 24</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} f_1 = N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 -1</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} f_1 \neq N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 25</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} b_3 = N_{x-2}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 26</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x+1} b_3 \neq N_{x-2}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 27</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} b_3 = N_{x-2}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 28</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x+2} b_3 \neq N_{x-2}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 29</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} f_1 = N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 -1</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>$N_{x-1} f_1 \neq N_x$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Last vote ok

Disconnected

Last vote ok

Disconnected

Last vote ok

Disconnected

Last vote ok

Disconnected

Last vote ok

Disconnected

Last vote ok

Disconnected

Last vote ok

Disconnected

Last vote ok

Disconnected
### F.3. Markov model for binary trees

We also present the results of using Markov models to study local correction of the checksummed binary tree described in Chapter 4, and the sibling-linked binary tree described in Chapter 7.

In the analysis of the sibling-linked tree we use Markov models to separately predict the probability of performing correction when only pointers may contain errors, and when only keys and checksums may contain errors. The probability of correcting a sibling-linked tree when errors may occur in pointers, keys, and checksums, is approximated by multiplying these two probabilities.

If distinct dummy variables are used in distinct generating functions, and the Markov model for correcting pointers is extended by also allowing keys to contain errors with probability $p$, then the generating function describing correction of both keys and pointers in a sibling-linked tree is merely the product of the generating function describing the correction of each.

Unfortunately, since this composite generating function contains two distinct dummy variables, the techniques described in Chapter 8 cannot be used to identify the expected number of nodes traversed by an algorithm correcting both keys and pointers. Therefore, we present separately the expected number of nodes traversed in a sibling-linked tree when each of these two types of error occurs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1-local-correction of Checksummed binary tree</th>
<th>1-local-correction of keys in Sibling-linked tree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 1 $1-p$ 1st component ok</td>
<td>0 1 $1-p$ $N_x$ bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 2 $p$ 1st component bad</td>
<td>0 2 $p$ $N_x$ bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 3 $1-p$ 2nd component ok</td>
<td>1 0 $z(1-p)$ $N_x$ good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 4 $p$ 2nd component bad</td>
<td>1 3 $p$ $N_x$ bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 0 $z(1-p)^4$ At least two errors</td>
<td>2 4 $1-p$ $N_x$ bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 -1 $1-(1-p)^4$ At least two errors</td>
<td>2 -1 $p$ $N_x$ good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 5 $1-p$ 3rd component ok</td>
<td>3 5 $1-p$ $N_{x+1}$ good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 6 $p$ 3rd component bad</td>
<td>3 -1 $p$ $N_{x+1}$ bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 0 $z(1-p)^3$ No other errors</td>
<td>4 6 $1-p$ $N_{x+1}$ good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 -1 $1-(1-p)^3$ At least two errors</td>
<td>4 -1 $p$ $N_{x+1}$ bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 0 $z(1-p)$ 4th component ok</td>
<td>5 0 $z^2(1-p)$ $N_{x+1}$ good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 7 $p$ 4th component bad</td>
<td>5 -1 $p$ $N_{x+1}$ bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 0 $z(1-p)^2$ No other errors</td>
<td>6 0 $z^2(1-p)$ $N_{x+1}$ good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 -1 $1-(1-p)^2$ At least two errors</td>
<td>6 -1 $p$ $N_{x+1}$ bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 0 $z(1-p)$ 5th component ok</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 -1 $p$ At least two errors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 1-local-correction of pointers in Sibling-linked tree

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Z</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>State Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>(\frac{1}{3}) At a leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>(\frac{1}{3}) At incomplete node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>(\frac{1}{3}) At full node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(z(1-p)) Left link null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>(p) Left link bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(z(1-p)) Right link null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p) Both links bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>(1-p) Left link ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>(p) Left link bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(z(1-p)) Right link ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>(p) Right link ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>(1-p) Right link ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p) Disconnected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(z(1-p)) Child arc ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p) Child arc bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>(1-p) Left link ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>(p) Left link bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>(1-p) Right link ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>(p) Right link ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>(1-p) Right link ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p) Disconnected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(z(1-p)) First arc ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>(p) First arc bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(z(1-p)^2) Neither arc bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(1-(1-p)^2) At least one arc bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>(z(1-p)) Other arc ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>(p) At least one arc bad</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F.4. Graphs**

In the following graphs, predicted results were obtained using Markov models presented earlier in this appendix and the Maple code presented at the beginning of appendix E. The observed results were obtained from corresponding empirical studies. In the empirical studies storage structure instances contained 100 data nodes. Binary trees contained approximately the same number of full, incomplete, and leaf nodes, but no effort was made to ensure that these trees were balanced. Pointers, and when appropriate keys and checksums, in each storage structure instance were assigned arbitrary incorrect values with the indicated constant probability and a test performed to determine if the instance was correctable. This test was repeated 1000 times and the total number of times that the instance was corrected recorded. This exercise was repeated under a variety of different error probabilities.
Legend:

- - - - Predicted
- - - - Misled
- - - - - Observed
Legend:

- Predicted
- Misled
- Observed

Legend:

- Checksummed list
- Mod(3) list
- Mod(2) list
Legend:

- Predicted
- Misled
- Observed

Legend:

- Predicted
- Keys
- Pointers
- Both
Checksummed and Sibling-linked Trees

Legend:
- Sibling-linked tree pointers
- Checksummed tree
- Sibling-linked tree keys
References


80. C. C. Li, P. P. Chen, and W. K. Fuchs, Local concurrent error detection and correction in data structures using virtual backpointers, Computer Systems Group, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign (1987).


